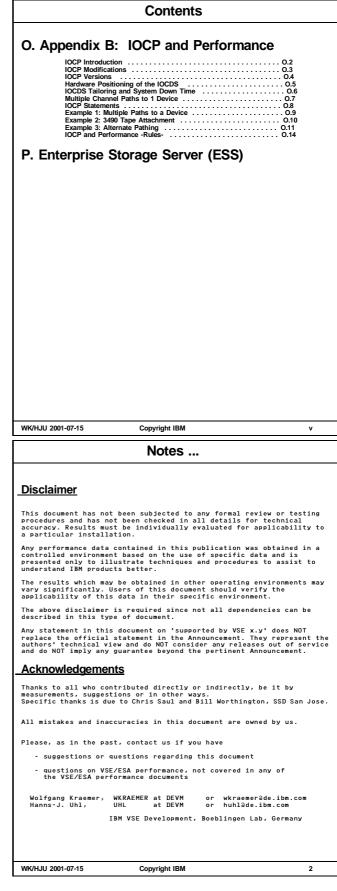
	Contents
IBM VSE/ESA I/O Subsystem Performance Considerations Wolfgang Kraemer Hanns-J. Uhl	Contents         Notes       1         General References       5         A. Introduction and Overview         VSE/ESA Performance/Capacity Evolution       A2         ESA Exploitation Basics       A3         VO Subsystem Performance Tasks       A4         What is This Document For?       A5         Impact of VO on Overall Performance       A6         VO Response Time in a Nutshell       A3         How to Proceed in Case of High IORT       A9         IORT Checklist       A11         Checks in case of I/O Degradation       A12         I/O Configuration Rules       A21         ESA I/O Channel Subsystem       A22         General ESCON Statements       A24         B. ECKD vs CKD Channel Programs       B4         ECKD Basics       B2         ECKD Usage in VS/ESA       B5         More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use       B12
Dept 3221	C DASD Caching in Conoral
71032-14 Boeblingen	C. DASD Caching in General
WKRAEMER at DĒVM wkraemer at de.ibm.com Update 2001-07-15	Principal DASD Cache Benefits       C.2         DASD Cache Terms       C.3         Principal DASD Cache Functions       C.4         Staging and Destaging       C.6         DASD Cache Strategies       C.7         Cache Options Hierarchy       C.9         DASD Cache Performance Benefits       C.10         VSE/ESA DASD Cache Statistics       C.13         VSE/ESA Cache Status Displays       C.16         2-Stage vs 1-Stage Cached Subsystems       C.17         Cache Behavior Factors       C.19         DASD Cache Bit settings       C.20         Some ECKD Caching Bits and VSE Releases       C.22
Copyright IBM	
	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM i
Contents	Contents
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         Wore Info on RAMAC 3       G.32
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis Overview and Summary D.2 VO Response Times from SIR SMF D.3 Concepts for VO Intensiveness D.6	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis Overview and Summary D.2 VO Response Times from SIR SMF D.3 Concepts for VO Intensiveness D.6 VO Response Time VO Response Time D.7 SOSU Wait in Channel Queue D.8	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Array Family, RVA
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         I/O Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         I/O Response Time       D.7         I/O Response Time       D.7         I/O Response Time       D.8         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Disconnect Time       D.12	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.27         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Array Family, RVA         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         I/O Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         I/O Response Time       D.7         IOSQ Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Service Time       D.12         Device Onnect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Cache Size Considerations       D.17	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         Wore Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Array Family, RVA       G.32         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (933))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (933))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (933))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (933))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.7
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         I/O Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         I/O Response Time       D.7         IOSQ Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Service Time       D.12         Device Onnect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Cache Size Considerations       D.17	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Array Family, RVA       G.32         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Verview       H.3         RVA 3939 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.7         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.13
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         I/O Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         I/O Response Time       D.7         I/O Response Time       D.7         I/O SQ Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Disconnect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Cache Size Considerations       D.17         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities       D.21	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         Wore Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Array Family, RVA       G.32         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (933))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (933))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (933))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (933))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.7
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         I/O Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         I/O Response Time       D.7         I/O Response Time       D.17         Device Disconnect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Cache Size Considerations       D.17         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities       D.21	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (933)       H.3         RVA 9333 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.7         RVA 9333 Model Summary       H.5         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.9         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA Enhancements       H.14         Log-Structured File System Aspects       H.18         RVA Space Management       H.19         Perf.       Benefits of LSA vs other RAMACs
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         I/O Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         I/O Response Time       D.7         Device Disconnect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.12         Device Considerations       D.16         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities       D.21         E. 9340 DASD Attachments       9340 DASD Caching	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         Wore Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (933)       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (933)       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Performance       H.7         RVA-2 Turbo       H.9         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA Space Management       H.14         Log-Structured File System Aspects       H.18         RVA Space Management       H.19         Perf. Benefits of LSA vs other RAMACs       H.20         RVA IXFP Program       H.21         IXFP DDSR for VWVSE       H.22
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         I/O Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         I/O Response Time       D.7         I/O Response Time       D.17         Device Disconnect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Cache Size Considerations       D.17         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities       D.21	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Array Family, RVA         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage TVA' (9393)       H.3         RVA 3933 Model Summary       H.5         RVA 3933 Model Summary       H.5         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA 2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.11         RVA Enhancements       H.14         Log-Structured File System Aspects       H.14         RVA Space Management       H.19         RVA Space Management       H.21         RVA Poporam       H.21         RVA HAP DDSR for VWVSE       H.23
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Vo Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         VO Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for V0 Intensiveness       D.6         VO Response Time       D.7         DSG Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Disconnect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.12         Device Considerations       D.16         Cache Size Considerations       D.17         Candidate Devices for VO Truning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for VO Priorities       D.21         E. 93440 DASD Attachments       9340 DASD Caching         9340 DASD Caching       E.2         F. 3990-6 I/O Subsystem       3990-6 General Remarks         3990-6 General Remarks       F.2	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Array Storage       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Array Family, RVA         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (9330)       H.3         RVA 3333 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.7         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA Enhancements       H.14         Log-Structured File System Aspects       H.18         RVA Space Management       H.19         RVA KPP Porgram       H.21         XFP DDSR for VMVVSE       H.22         RVA XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.23         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         VO Response Times for SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for VO Intensiveness       D.7         VOSQ Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Connect Time       D.11         Device Connect Time       D.16         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.17         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities       D.21         E. 9340 DASD Attachments       E.2         Samo-6 General Remarks       F.2         3990-6 Summary       F.3         3990-6 General Remarks       F.3         3990-6 Chinan Commany       F.4         Record Caching       F.4	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       6.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       6.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       6.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage TVA' (9393)       H.3         RVA 3393 Model Summary       H.5         RVA 3393 Model Summary       H.5         RVA-2 Turbo       H.9         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA 2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA Space Management       H.19         RVA Space Management       H.19         RVA Space Management       H.21         IXFP DDSR for VWVSE       H.22         RVA HYPShapShot       H.23         IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VWSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VWSE       H.24
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         VO Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for VO Intensiveness       D.6         VO Response Time       D.7         IOSQ Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Disconnect Time       D.10         Device Disconnect Time       D.11         Device Onnect Time       D.16         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.17         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities       D.21         E. 93400 DASD Attachments       S140         Samo-6 General Remarks       F.2         Samo-6 General Remarks       F.3         Samo-6 General Remarks       F.4         Record Caching       F.6         New Cache bit Settings and Effects       F.6	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage TVA' (9393)       H.3         RVA 3933 Model Summary       H.5         RMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.1         RVA 2 Turbo       H.1         RVA 2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA 2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA 2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.11         RVA Space Management       H.19         RVA Space Management       H.19         RVA Space Management       H.21         IXFP Possibot for VMVSE       H.22         RVA HYPShapShot for VMVSE       H.22         RVA HYPShapShot for VMVSE       H.24         IXFP/ShapShot for VMVSE       H.24         IXFP/ShapShot for VMVSE       H.27         I. RAMAC Electr, Array Storage "REA' (9397)       12         RAMAC Scal. Array Storage "REA' (9397)       14
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         V0 Response Times from SR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         V0 Response Time       D.7         Device Service Time       D.10         Device Connect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.19         PRTY10 Settings for I/O Priorities       D.21         E. 93440 DASD Attachments       9340 DASD Caching         9340 DASD Caching       E.2         F. 3990-6 I/O Subsystem       Signo-6 Summary         3990-6 Summary       F.3         3990-6 Summary       F.4         Record Caching       F.5         Regular Data Format (RDF)       F.6         New Cache bit Settings and Effects       F.8         IBM 3990-36 HW Defaults for Caching       F.10	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage (VA' (393))       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.7         RVA-2 Turbo       H.9         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA 42 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.11         RVA 5pace Management       H.12         RVA 400 Spructured File System Aspects       H.18         RVA 5pace Management       H.19         Perf. Benefits of LSA vs other RAMACS       H.20         RVA IXFP/SnapShot       H.22         RVA IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.21         IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA       H.27         I. RAMAC Electr. Array Storage 'REA' (9397)       12         RAMAC Scal. Array Storage 'REA' (9397)       12         RAMAC Scal. Array Storage 'REA' (9396)       14 </th
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         V/O Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         V/O Response Time       D.7         DSG Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Disconnect Time       D.10         Device Osconcet Time       D.12         Device Osconcet Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.12         Device Considerations       D.16         Cache Size Considerations       D.17         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities       D.21         E. 9340 DASD Attachments       E.2         F. 3990-6 I/O Subsystem       F.3         3990-6 General Remarks       F.2         3990-6 General Remarks       F.3         3990-6 General Remarks       F.4         Record Caching       F.5         Regular Data Format (RDF)       F.6         New Cache bit Settings and Effects       F.8         BM 3990-36 HWD Deataperment Summary       F.10         BM 3990-36 HWD Dataperment Summary       F.10         Device Data Format (RDF)       F.6         New Cache bit Settings and Effects	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         Wore Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (3933)       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.7         RVA-2 Turbo       H.9         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA 2 Space Management       H.10         RVA Space Management       H.12         RVA Space Management       H.19         Perf. Benefits of LSA vs other RAMACS       H.20         RVA IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.22         IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA       H.27         I. RAMAC Electr. Array Storage 'REA' (9397)       12         RAMAC Electr. Array Storage 'REA' (9397)       12         RAMAC Scal. Array Storage 'REA' (9397)       14         RSA-1 Models       I6         RSA-2 Wo
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         V0 Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for V0 Intensiveness       D.6         V0 Response Time       D.7         DSG Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Disconnect Time       D.10         Device Connect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Candidate Devices for V0 Truning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for V0 Priorities       D.21         E. 93440 DASD Attachments       E.2         F. 3990-6 I/O Subsystem       Sayo 6 Summary         3990-6 Enhancement Summary       F.4         Record Caching       F.5         Regular Data Format (RDF)       F.8         New Cache Bit Settings and Effects       F.8         BM 3990-36 HW Defaults for Caching       F.9         Subjor-36 Enhancements       F.10         Further 3990-6 Enhancements       F.12         VSE/ESA Caching       F.10         Further 3990-6 Enhancements       F.12         VSE/ESA Caching       F.11         Perice Bit Settings and Effects       F.8         BM 39390-36 HW Defaults for Caching 3990	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       G.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       G.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       G.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       G.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (9330)       H.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.7         RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA 2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.13         RVA Enhancements 05/98       H.13         RVA Enhancements 05/98       H.13         RVA Space Management       H.14         Log-Structured File System Aspects       H.18         RVA Space Management       H.29         RVA IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.22         RVF/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.22         RVA IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VWVSE       H.24         IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA       H.27         I. RAMA
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis           Overview and Summary         D.2           VO Response Times from SIR SMF         D.3           Concepts for I/O Intensiveness         D.6           V/O Response Time         D.7           DSQ Wait in Channel Queue         D.8           Device Service Time         D.12           Device Service Time         D.12           Device Service Time         D.12           Device Connect Time         D.12           Device Connect Time         D.14           Data Transfer Speeds         D.16           Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning         D.17           Candidate Devices for I/O Priorities         D.21           E. 9340 DASD Attachments         B.24           Syste DasD Caching         E.2           F. 3990-6 I/O Subsystem         Sago-6 General Remarks         F.2           Syste Service Data Format (RDF)         F.6         F.8           Regular Data Format (RDF)         F.6         New Cache bit Settings and Effects         F.8           BM 3990-6 Summary         F.3         Systematics of F.10         Systematics of F.11           VSE/ESA Caching Recommentations         F.11         YSE/ESA Caching Recommentations         F.15	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       6.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.29         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       6.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       6.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (9330)       H.3         RVA 3933 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (9330)       H.1         RVA 3933 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.1         RVA 2 Turbo       H.9         RVA 2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA Enhancements       Styles         RVA Enhancements       H.11         RVA Space Management       H.19         Port Benefits of LSA vs other RAMACS       H.22         RVA IXFP Program       H.21         XFP DDSR for VMVSE       H.22         RVA IXFP/SnapShot tor VMVSE       H.24         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24 </th
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         V0 Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for V0 Intensiveness       D.6         V0 Response Time       D.7         DSG Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Disconnect Time       D.10         Device Connect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Candidate Devices for V0 Truning       D.19         PRTYIO Settings for V0 Priorities       D.21         E. 93440 DASD Attachments       E.2         F. 3990-6 I/O Subsystem       Sayo 6 Summary         3990-6 Enhancement Summary       F.4         Record Caching       F.5         Regular Data Format (RDF)       F.8         New Cache Bit Settings and Effects       F.8         BM 3990-36 HW Defaults for Caching       F.9         Subjor-36 Enhancements       F.10         Further 3990-6 Enhancements       F.12         VSE/ESA Caching       F.10         Further 3990-6 Enhancements       F.12         VSE/ESA Caching       F.11         Perice Bit Settings and Effects       F.8         BM 39390-36 HW Defaults for Caching 3990	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       6.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.29         RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)       6.30         More Info on RAMAC 3       6.32         H. RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       12         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (9393)       1.3         RVA 9393 Model Summary       1.5         RVA 9393 Model Summary       1.4         RVA 2393 Model Summary       1.4         RVA 21 Urbo       1.4         RVA 22 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       1.10         RVA 24 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       1.10         RVA 25 Store RAMAC Vistual Array Performance       1.10         RVA 24 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       1.10         RVA 25 Darb Rof VMVSE       1.12         RVA 14FP Program       1.21         RVA 14FP Program       1.21         KYF PDDSR for VMVSE       1.22         RVA 14FP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA       1.21         KYFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA       1.21         RAMAC Electr. Array
D. I/O Response Time Component Analysis         Overview and Summary       D.2         VO Response Times from SIR SMF       D.3         Concepts for I/O Intensiveness       D.6         V/O Response Time       D.7         DSQ Wait in Channel Queue       D.8         Device Disconnect Time       D.10         Device Disconnect Time       D.12         Device Connect Time       D.14         Data Transfer Speeds       D.16         Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning       D.17         Candidate Devices for I/O Priorities       D.21         F. 9340 DASD Attachments       D.21         System Caching       E.2         F. 3990-6 I/O Subsystem       System Fig.         System Summary       F.3         System Summary       F.4         Record Caching       F.5         Regular Data Formait (RDF)       F.6         New Cache bit Settings and Effects       F.8         ISM 3990-6 Hundles for Caching       F.9         System Summary       F.10         Purther 3990-6 Hundles for Caching       F.9         Support of Prined Data For Caching Recommentations       F.16         New Cache bit Settings and Effects       F.8         ISM 3990-6 Enhancement Summary	RAMAC 2 Specific Performance Remarks       6.25         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.27         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.29         RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks       6.20         More Info on RAMAC 3       Gara         More Info on RAMAC 3       Gara         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview       H.2         RAMAC Virtual Array Storage RVA' (9333)       H.3         RVA 3393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.7         RVA 2393 Model Summary       H.5         RAMAC Virtual Array Performance       H.1         RVA 21 Urbo       SRV 2 Performance       H.1         RVA 22 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance       H.10         RVA 24 Enhancements       Styles       H.14         Log-Structured File System Aspects       H.18       RVA Space Management       H.19         RVA 1XFP Program       H.21       XFP DDSR for VMVSE       H.22         RVA 1XFP/SnapShot       H.23       XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24       XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24       XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.24         XFP/SnapShot for VMVSE       H.26 </th

	Contents	
	Internal Disk and IOCP         J.18           Internal Disk - IOCP Example         J.19           Further MP 2000 ID References         J.20           VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk         J.21           Internal Disk SMF Measurement Data         J.22           Multiprise 3000 Internal Disk (ID)         J.23           MP 3000 ID Config. Scheme         J.24           MP 3000 ID Performance Aspects         J.27           MP 3000 ID Performance Results         J.31           MP 3000 ID Performance Results         J.34	
k. Din	I and I/O Caching, Global View	
	DIM/Caching Hierarchy K2 Overall Statements K3 VSAM Share Options and I/O Caching K4 VSE DIM Means and I/O Caching K8	
Mis	c VSE I/O Aspects	
	File Placement on Disk(s)       L2         VTOC Performance       L3         General CKD/ECKD VTOC Hints       L4         General FBA VTOC Hints       L5         BUFSIZE Consideration       L6         VSE/ESA Missing Interrupt Handler       L8	
<b>N. I/O</b>	Performance PTFs	
	VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4 Performance APARs/PTFs	
N. App	Dendix A: Tape Subsystems	
	Determining Factors for Tape Performance       N.3         Overall 3490E Summary       N.4         FAST COPY Results for 3490E and 3390s       N.5         VSE/FAST COPY OPTIMIZE Consideration       N.6         Autom. Cartridge Loader Improvements       N.7         3591 High Performance Tape Subsystem       N.12         3591 High Performance Tape Control Unit       N.12         3494 Virtual Tape Library Dataserver       N.13         3494 Virtual Tape Server       N.14         3494 and VTS       N.15	
/K/HJU 200	1-07-15 Copyright IBM	iv
	Notes	
lotes		
ll infor resented	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status.	
ll infor resented t is int his docu	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment.	on in
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document	on in
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use - to use	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume	on in
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use his docu hese VSE	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document this performance data appropriately ment is unclassified and intended for VSE customers. performance documents are also available from Interne	on in nt
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use his docu hese VSE he VSE/E	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document this performance data appropriately ment is unclassified and intended for VSE customers.	on in nt
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use his docu hese VSE he VSE/E h	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document this performance data appropriately ment is unclassified and intended for VSE customers. performance documents are also available from Interne SA home page	on in nt
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use - to use his docu hese VSE he VSE/E h (h tarting	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document this performance data appropriately ment is unclassified and intended for VSE customers. performance documents are also available from Interne SA home page ttp://www.ibm.com/servers/server/zseries/os/vse	on in nt t via
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use his docu hese VSE/E he VSE/E h (h tarting vailable he follo	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document this performance data appropriately ment is unclassified and intended for VSE customers. performance documents are also available from Interne SA home page ttp://www.ibm.com/servers/server/zseries/os/vse ttp://www.ibm.com/s390/vse/ former URL) with the VSE/ESA 2.4 documentation, these documents ar	on in nt t via e also
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use - to use his docu hese VSE/E he VSE/E he VSE/E he to the vSE/E he follo eader fo 'IBM VS 'IBM VS	mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document this performance data appropriately ment is unclassified and intended for VSE customers. performance documents are also available from Interne SA home page ttp://www.ibm.com/servers/server/zseries/os/vse ttp://www.ibm.com/s390/vse/ former URL) with the VSE/ESA 2.4 documentation, these documents ar on the VSE/ESA CD-ROM kit SK27-0060.	on in nt t via e also be
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use - to use his docu hese VSE/E he VSE/E he VSE/E he touse the vse/ the vse/ t	<pre>mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document this performance data appropriately ment is unclassified and intended for VSE customers. performance documents are also available from Interne SA home page ttp://www.ibm.com/servers/server/zseries/os/vse ttp://www.ibm.com/servers/server/zseries/os/vse ttp://www.ibm.com/s390/vse/ former URL) with the VSE/ESA 2.4 documentation, these documents ar on the VSE/ESA 2.4 documentation, these documents ar on the VSE/ESA 2.4 documentation, these documents ar on the VSE/ESA CD-ROM kit SK27-0060. wing documents are also available via Internet, in Ado mmat (.pDF): E/ESA 1.3/1.4 Performance Considerations' E/ESA V2 Performance Considerations' E/ESA Hints for Performance Activities' E/ESA Hints for Performance Activities' E/ESA Hints for Performance Considerations' E/ESA V2.5 Performance Considerations' E/ESA Performance</pre>	on in nt t via e also be nt) 0' F.PDF,
ll infor resented t is int his docu t is the - to use t ouse his docu hese VSE he VSE/E he VSE/E he files 'IBM VS 'IBM VS	<pre>mation contained in this document has been collected a based on the current status. ended and required to update the performance informati ment. responsibility of any user of this VSE/ESA I/O docume the latest update of this document this performance data appropriately ment is unclassified and intended for VSE customers. performance documents are also available from Interne SA home page ttp://www.ibm.com/servers/server/zseries/os/vse ttp://www.ibm.com/servers/server/zseries/os/vse ttp://www.ibm.com/s390/vse/ former URL) with the VSE/ESA 2.4 documentation, these documents ar on the VSE/ESA 2.4 documentation, these documents ar on the VSE/ESA 2.4 documentation, these documents ar on the VSE/ESA CD-ROM kit SK27-0060. wing documents are also available via Internet, in Ado mmat (.pDF): E/ESA 1.3/1.4 Performance Considerations' E/ESA V2 Performance Considerations' E/ESA Hints for Performance Activities' E/ESA Hints for Performance Activities' E/ESA Hints for Performance Considerations' E/ESA V2.5 Performance Considerations' E/ESA Performance</pre>	on in nt t via e also be nt) p; F.PDF,



#### Notes ...

#### **Base Documents**

This document essentially deals with VSE/ESA I/O performance aspects. It applies to all VSE/ESA releases, but e.g. the scope of ECKD support has always been increased from release to release.

It has been composed of existing charts from the other VSE performance documents and newly arranged and enhanced.

The VSE/ESA performance documents (see a previous foil) are also available to any IBM person, as part of the VEI2PERF/VEI3PERF/VE21PERF PACKAGEs on the same IBMVSE TOOLS disk. Contact your IBM representative to retrieve a copy for you by entering the following CMS command:

TOOLS SENDTO BOEVM3 VMTOOLS IBMVSE GET VExxPERF PACKAGE

These documents contain references to further VSE performance documents.

#### Trademarks

The	following	terms	included	in	this	paper	are	trademan	rks of	IBM:
	ES/9000 VM/ESA Multipri	se	ESA/390 VSE/ESA Magstar		ESC	tem/390 DN scape	)	SQL/DS ECKD		PR/SM RAMAC
Trad	demarks of	other	companies	5:						
	EXPLORE/V	SE	Lege	ent	Corp	oration	۱/	Computer	Asso	ciates

THOM WORE		
TMON/VSE	Landmark Corporation	
ADABAS	Software AG, Germany	
R/2	SAP AG, Walldorf, Germany	
CACHE/VSE	Blueline Software Corporation	
BIM VIO	Ben I. Moyle Corporation	
OPTI-CACHE	Barnard Systems Incorporated	
StorageTek,		
Iceberg,	Storage Technology Corporation	
	Storage reclinicity corporation	
SnapShot		

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

3

5

WK/

#### **General References**

#### Some General References

The following are general references for further performance information in the context of VSE I/O performance.

Introduction to Non-Synchronous Direct Access Storage Subsystems GC26-4519-0, 01/90  $\,$ 

Extended Count Key Data and Non-Synchronous DASD I/O GC23-3571-00, 07/91  $\,$ 

DASD Tuning and VSE Performance, by Thurman Pylant, GUIDE 81, New Orleans, 11/91 As DASDTUN PACKAGE on the IBMVSE tools disk

VSAM Performance Tuning for the Experienced VSAM Tuner VSE/ESA Techn. Conf. 05/95 Atlanta, by Dan Janda, \_\_\_ p \_\_\_ pages

IBM Storage Subsystem Enhancements, G246–0011–00, ITSO San Jose, 07/92, 206 pages (3990 and 9340)

S/370 and S/390 DASD Reference Chart, by Bill Worthington DASDCHT package on MKTTOOLS disk (IBM INTERNAL USE ONLY)

VSE/ESA Performance Management and Tuning, by Bill Merrow 1993, 385 pages, Mac Graw-Hill, J. Ranade IBM Series, ISBN 0-07-041753-9

Balanced Systems and Capacity Planning, GG22–9299–04, by P.T. Borchetta and Ray J. Wicks, 08/93, 125 pages

IBM Storage Systems Update for VSE and VM, by Bill Worthington,IBM VM/VSE Tech Conf Reno, NV, 05/98

IBM Storage Systems Update, by James Cosentino, IBM. WAVV Albany, NY,09/98

For device specific references, refer to the individual reference lists at the begin of the individual chapters of this document.

All references to documents (e.g. Presentation Guides) on IBM disks cited here are intended for use by your IBM representative in discussions with you on individual products. Contact him if specific need arises.

Refer also to the VSE/ESA information on the Internet: http://www.ibm.com/s390/vse/

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

#### Glossary

## Glo

<u>ossary</u>	
CFW	Cache Fast Write A 3990-3/6 function which can be used for volatile data
CSS	Channel Subsystem An ESA architectural term for the total I/O subsystem. Also IOS is used for I/O Subsystem
DCME	Dynamic Cache Management Enhanced An MVS SMS function to dynamically cache on data set level
DFW	DASD Fast Write A 3990-3/6 extended caching function
DIM	Data in Memory A concept to store as much data as possible∕reasonable in processor storage
EMIF	ESCON Multiple Image Facility Sharing of ESCON channels between PR/SM LPARs
ESS	Enterprise Storage Server An I/O subsystem with multiple platform attachment.
IDRC	Improved Data Recording Capability A data compaction feature for for tape subsystems
LIC	Licenced Internal Code Microcode as part of the H/W
LSR	VSAM Local Shared Resources A VSAM buffering method which allows that different files share the same buffers (Data, Index)
NSR	VSAM Nonshared Resources A VSAM buffering method with separate buffers per file
NVS	Non Volatile Storage
RAID	Redundant Array of Independent/Inexpensive Disks
RAMAC	RAID Architecture with Multilevel Adaptive Cache
RDF	Regular Data Format A 3990–6 exploited caching bit, for CKD/ECKD tracks with equal length records and w/o (H/W) keys
/HJU 2001-07	-15 Copyright IBM 4
	Introduction and Overview

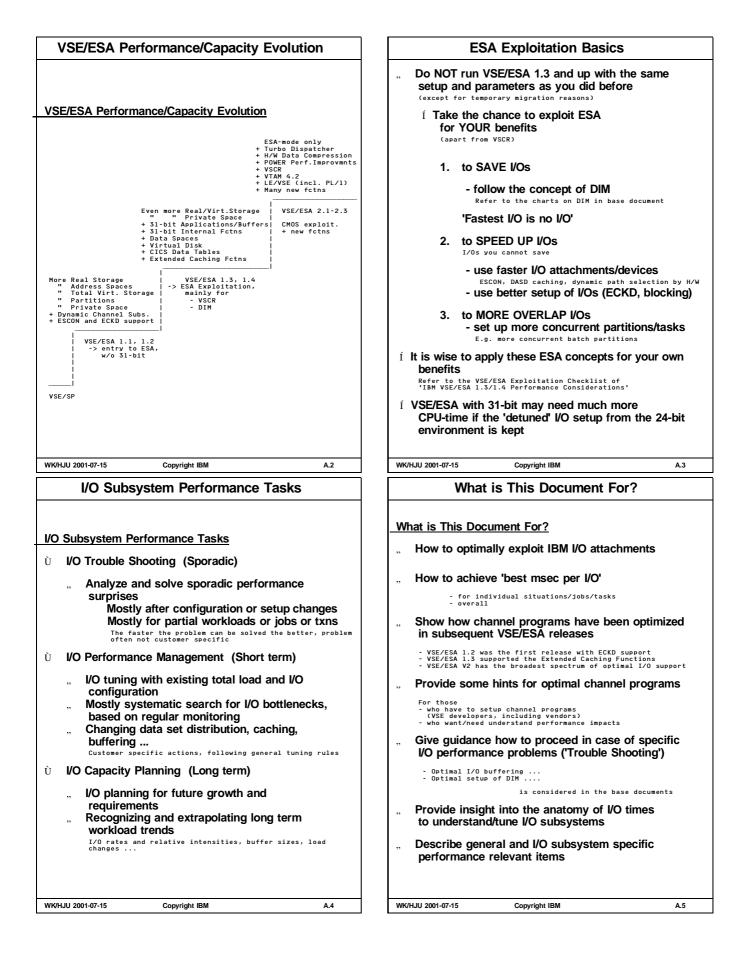
PART A.

Introduction and Overview

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

A.1



Impact of I/O on Overall Performance	I/O Performance Problems
" Overall System Performance	VO Performance Problems
(i.e. ET/RT at a given total system load) <b>depends on</b>	In case of performance problems,
CPU-time component I/O-time component Other resources (locks on user/system res.)	Í High(er) ET/RT may be caused by high(er) total time spending in the I/O Subsystem:
Includes queueing (wait) times.	More I/Os
	Slower I/Os (higher device service time)
Overall Runtime (Batch Elapsed Time ET or Tx Response Time RT)	This document deals with the 2nd aspect
I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	<ul> <li>In any case, reducing the number of I/Os via DIM (Data In Memory) is the most effective way:</li> </ul>
-       	'Fastest I/O is NO I/O'
	VO Response Time Information
Batch job Elapsed Time or Online Tx Response Time:	<ul> <li>Derformance Monitors</li> <li>To determine I/O response times (and its components), a VSE system monitor is required, e.g.</li> <li>EXPLORE/VSE from Computer Associates</li> </ul>
CPU CPU Other Total I/O-time wait time delays (#IOs x IORT) 	TMON/VSE     from Landmark       Ù     VSE SIR SMF command       For trouble shooting only, VSE/ESA 2.1.x. and up.       Refer to chart D3 'I/O Response Times from SIR SMF'
Other delays may be - waiting for a locked resource - caused by VM, not dispatching the VSE guest Simplified figure does not show potential CPU/IO overlap	<ul> <li>D Estimates</li> <li>In exceptional cases approximate total I/O reponse time can be estimated (e.g. in single thread, neglecting (seldom) IO/compute overlap)</li> </ul>
VK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.6	WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         A.7           How to Proceed in Case of High IORT
IORT (at a single glance)	To observe
IORT = Wait_in_VSE_channel_queue	" Always relate msec/IO to KB/IO or to the function performed, (e.g. VIOC rest-of-cylinder search)
+ Wait_in_Channel_Subsystem (Uncached) + Device_seek + Rot.delay + RPS_miss_time + Device_Channel_transfer_time	" For track oriented sequential operations, calculate the #revolutions per read/written track Applies epecially to native (non-simulated) devices
<pre>(Cached) + %Cache-miss x Cache_miss_resolution_time + Channel_transfer_time</pre>	Things to Differentiate when IORT is High
All components of IORT are being discussed in detail in section	To faster localize and solve the problem
'I/O Response Time Component Analysis' Refer also to that section	Try (if possible) to differentiate between
<ul> <li>if required/beneficial on top of the hints given here for 'trouble shooting'</li> </ul>	" Single and Multi-thread
- if you want or need to do a more systematic 'performance tuning'	It simplifies the analysis, if the msec/IO problem already occurs in single thread (only 1 task/partition is issuing I/Os to the disk)
What are unacceptable I/O Response Times?	" Logical and Physical Device Utilization
" User Definition	S/390 logical devices (seen by the S/W) may be mapped into/to different physical devices or HDDs, e.g. RAMAC or Internal Disk.
'Any value that is worse than my expectation' 'Any value that is worse than what I had before'	In any case, the S/390 logical device utilization (from S/W monitors) should not be too high, since only 1 SSCH can be active per S/390 logical device.
" Technical Definition 'Any value, be it average or individual, that is technically	In such a case, as holds already for cached devices, physical HDI utilization is not directly visible from S/390 S/W, but may be a
not explainable with the real potential of the I/O attachment with optimal channel programs' 'Any value that simply is caused by a too high I/O-rate to a device or by a too high path utilization' For rough values, you simply can expect, refer to Foil D2 'Rough Values for Device Service Time Components'	bottleneck if the HDD utilization is high. For RAID-5 this should not be a specific problem due to load balancing via RAID-5 across all HDDs of a drawer. For Internal Disk (RAID-1) several S/390 volumes reside on a single 9G HDD (and its mirror), thus this can be a problem.
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.8	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.9
	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.9

	IORT Checklist
Things to Differentiate (cont'd)	How to Proceed in Case of an IORT Problem?
	Checklist predominantly is for trouble-shooting, not for standard I/O performance tuning (discussed in part D)
" READ and WRITE	Spectrum and Sequence of Checks
WRITEs may even be subdivided into 'Format' and 'Update' WRITEs, of special impact for cached subsystems	DASD Attachment To check Cached Uncached
" Different program products or type of DASD accesses (random, sequential,)	Problem in Single or Multi-thread: 1. VSE device type (VOLUME cuu) X X
" VSE and VWESA CP	2. Actual cache settings (VM+VSE) X - 3. Cache hit ratio(s) X -
I/O timings and caching bits may be different, e.g. <ul> <li>a higher VSE I/O Response Time may indicate high CP overhead (check VM CCW translation, refer to VM/VSE performance doc.)</li> </ul>	4. VM settings of I/O relevanceXX5. S/W and H/W levels (PTFs)XX
<ul> <li>VM/CP may not allow a VSE guest to use certain cache functions (if so, correctly set the guest parameters in VM)</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>6. ECKD channel programs</li> <li>X</li> <li>X</li> <li>7. Cache bits/Mask byte in DX CCWs</li> <li>X</li> </ol>
" Statistical overall values vs individual single values	8. EREP incidents X X
Performance monitor results vs an individual trace entry	9. IOCDS definitions X X
" The following data may give more insight in case	10. Sector value settings X X
of an IORT problem:	Problem in Multi-thread only: 11. Device utilizations X X
IOSQ Time Time waiting in VSE channel queue PENDing Time Time between SSCH and first CCW executed CONNect Time Channel connected to 'device'	11. Device utilizations     A       (logical/physical HDD)       12. Channel/path utilizations       X
DISConnect Time Channel disconnected from 'device' The anatomy of I/O Response Times is widely discussed in the	13. Cache sizes and hit ratios X -
section 'I/O Response Time Component Analysis'	<ul> <li>Sequence of checks is suggested, not mandatory</li> <li>Sector value settings is really last, done only if lost revolutions are the only chance</li> </ul>
Checks in case of I/O Degradation	Checks in case of I/O Degradation
	If I/O Degradation Occurs for Cached Attachments
Checks in case of I/O Degradation To Check 1:	To Check 2: " Check that all cache settings are active/enabled (depends on subsystem type)
To Check 1:	" Check that all cache settings are active/enabled (depends on subsystem type) Applicable for with any vith RSA Int (no Subsys RAMAC2 9390 RVA Int (no Subsys RAMAC2 9390 RVA Int (no Subsys RAMAC2 9390 RVA Int
To Check 1: " Check the actually used device type	" Check that all cache settings are active/enabled (depends on subsystem type) Applicable for with any DASD DFW) a) Basic caching
To Check 1:	" Check that all cache settings are active/enabled (depends on subsystem type) Applicable for SP90-3/6 9345 RAMAC 9390 RVA Mult Applicable for DFW) a) Basic caching Device level ACTIVE x x x - Subsys level ACTIVE x x x x - DASD F. Write ACTIVE x * x * x x x
To Check 1: " Check the actually used device type All simulated 3380s, 3390s for the RAMAC family and the Internal Disk must be ADDed for performance (and functional) reasons as	", Check that all cache settings are active/enabled (depends on subsystem type)
To Check 1: " Check the actually used device type All simulated 3380s, 3390s for the RAMAC family and the Internal Disk must be ADDed for performance (and functional) reasons as ECKD. VSE/ESA 2.1 shows the device type in the VOLUME command display,	", Check that all cache settings are active/enabled (depends on subsystem type) Applicable for 3990-3/6 9345 RAMAC 9390 RVA Mult any (no DFW) a) Basic caching DACTIVE x - X x - Subsys level ACTIVE x - X x - Subsys level ACTIVE x - X x - DASD F. Write ACTIVE x + - X * X x *
To Check 1: " Check the actually used device type All simulated 3380s, 3390s for the RAMAC family and the Internal Disk must be ADDed for performance (and functional) reasons as ECKD. VSE/ESA 2.1 shows the device type in the VOLUME command display, before VSE/ESA 2.1 it is part of the 'PUB-table'. If device type is 3380='6C', find out why. May be you ADDed it as 'JSB0,EML' what you should only do temporarily to prove a vendor	" Check that all cache settings are active/enabled (depends on subsystem type)          Applicable for       3990-3/6       9345       RAMAC       9390       RVA       Mult         Basic caching       with       cached       Array       with       RSA       Int         DEW0       a)       DEW0       a)       b)       b)         Basic caching       x       -       -       x       x       -         DASD       DEW0       a)       b)       b)       b)       b)         Basic caching       x       -       -       x       x       -         DASD       F. Write ACTIVE       x       -       -       x       x       -         DASD F. Write ACTIVE       x       -       -       x       x       -         NVS       ON       x       -       -       x       x       x         Basic Caching on device and subsystem level (Device/Subsystem Caching) required both for READ and WRITE       -       DFW (device level) and NVS (subsystem level) are for WRITES         -       DFW (device level) and NVS (subsystem level) are for WRITES       -       Settings are done in CU via Set Subsystem Mode '87' CCW
To Check 1: , Check the actually used device type All simulated 3380s, 3390s for the RAMAC family and the Internal Disk must be ADDed for performance (and functional) reasons as ECKD. VSE/ESA 2.1 shows the device type in the VOLUME command display, before VSE/ESA 2.1 it is part of the 'PUB-table'. If device type is 3380='6C', find out why. May be you ADDed it as '3380,EML' what you should only do temporarily to prove a vendor product deficiency (see separate item) (This is also true for uncached attachments) Contact the vendor if channel programs are setup by the vendor.	<b>Check that all cache settings are active/enabled</b> (depends on subsystem type)          Applicable for       3990-3/6       9345       RAMAC 9390       RVA Init Init Init Init Init Init Init Init
To Check 1: , Check the actually used device type All simulated 3380s, 3390s for the RAMAC family and the Internal Disk must be ADDed for performance (and functional) reasons as ECKD. VSE/ESA 2.1 shows the device type in the VOLUME command display, before VSE/ESA 2.1 it is part of the 'PUB-table'. If device type is 3380='6C', find out why. May be you ADDed it as '3380,EML' what you should only do temporarily to prove a vendor product deficiency (see separate item) (This is also true for uncached attachments) Contact the vendor if channel programs are setup by the vendor.	

Checks in case of I/O Degradation	Checks in case of I/O Degradation
Checks in case of I/O Degradation (cont'd)	
To Check 2 (cont'd)	
For VM:	Checks in case of I/O Degradation (cont'd)
To query cache status, use:	To Check 2 (cont'd)
	For VSE:
QUERY CACHE cuu Gives 'available for subsystem' plus 'activated for device' QUERY DASDFW cuu Gives DFW status 'active/inactive' QUERY CACHEFW cuu Gives CFW status 'active/inactive' QUERY NVS cuu Gives 'available/unavailable'	To query cache status, use:
To set cache status, if required, use also:	CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS
	In case of SUBSYS=cuu, - any cuu at the same logical subsystem can be used
SET CACHE DEVICE ON cuu Activates device level caching SET CACHE SUBSYS ON cuu Activates subsyst. 1vl caching SET DASDFW ON cuu Activates DFW on device level SET CACHEFW ON cuu Activates CFW on subsystem 1vl SET NYS ON cuu Makes NYS available on subsystem	- also the configured and available cache sizes are shown
	To set cache status, if required, use:
VM may enforce BYPASS CACHE if e.g. the NOCACHE option is defined in the MINIOPT directory statement for the Partial Pack Minidisk. VM never changes cache related settings in a DEFINE EXTENT CCW for	CACHE UNIT=cuu,ON CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,ON CACHE UNIT=cuu,FAST,ON CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,NVS,ON
a DEDicated device	> If uncached or cache setting is OK,
The ability to change/set caching status from a guest depends on the control level defined for the device, and on the type of device usage:	With some probability, no native/optimal VSE ECKD channel programs are used for the non-sync attached devices. In the very end this only can be proven by CCW traces in VSE.
o DEVCTL/SYSCTL for Full Pack Minidisks (FPMs) and DEDicated devices (DEDs)	Refer to 'VM/ESA Planning and Administration', SC24–5750 'VM/ESA CP Command and Utility Reference', SC24–5773
o For Partial Pack Minidisks (PPMs) guests cannot change e.g. caching status.	
Caching status and statistics can be obtained for any type of disks. Be aware that under VM, VSE caching statistics for PPMs represent the values for the total device. WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.14	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.15
Checks in case of I/O Degradation	Checks in case of I/O Degradation
Checks in case of I/O Degradation	Checks in case of I/O Degradation
To Check 3:	To Check 6/7:
To Check 3: " Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT)	To Check 6/7: " Check channel programs (READ & WRITE)
To Check 3: " Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/0 requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks').	To Check 6/7: " Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs
To Check 3: " Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT)	To Check 6/7: " Check channel programs (READ & WRITE)
To Check 3: " Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem.	To Check 6/7: ,, Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEV T=cuu-tape TRACE IO UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16)
To Check 3: " Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part	To Check 6/7: " Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEV T=cuu-tape TRACE IS UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) READY STARTSD
To Check 3: " Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: " VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/ID seen by VSE.	To Check 6/7: " Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEV T=cuu-tape TRACE IO UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SSCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SSCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16)
To Check 3: " Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: " VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/IO seen by VSE. If msec/IO (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results,	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEV T=cuu-tape TRACE IS UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SSCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) USUALLY CCWD=16 byte is sufficient for performance analysis.
To Check 3: ,, Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/D requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: ,, VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/ID seen by VSE. If msec/ID (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results, - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEV T=cuu-tape TRACE IS UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SSCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) READY STARTSD ////////////////////////////////////
To Check 3: ,, Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: ,, VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/ID seen by VSE. If msec/IO (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results, - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os via VM Monitors e.g. RTM/ESA, VMPRF) - make sure that (real) device is not throttled	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEV T=cuu-tape TRACE 10 UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) READY STARTSD ////////////////////////////////////
To Check 3: ,, Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/D requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: ,, VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/ID seen by VSE. If msec/ID (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results, - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os via VM Monitors e.g. RTM/ESA, VMPRF)	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEV T=cuu-tape TRACE ISOL UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SSCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) READY STARTSD ////////////////////////////////////
To Check 3: ,, Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: ,, VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/ID seen by VSE. If msec/IO (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results, - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os via VM Monitors e.g. RTM/ESA, VMPRF) - make sure that (real) device is not throttled QUERY THROTTLE	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEV T=cuu-tape TRACE IO UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SSCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) READY STARTSD ////////////////////////////////////
To Check 3: ,, Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for "RDF tracks"). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: ,, VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/IO seen by VSE. If msec/IO (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results, - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os via VM Monitors e.g. RTM/ESA, VMPRF) - make sure that (real) device is not throttled QUERY THROTTLE If the msec/IO delta seems to stem from more CP-time per I/O, - check the DASD definitions in VM (FPM, PPM and DEDs) - check the VM CW translation status/stats Refer e.g. to the document 'IBM VSE/ESA VM Guest Performance Considerations'	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) - use of ECKD - caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEY T=cuu-tape TRACE IO UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) READY STARTSD ////////////////////////////////////
To Check 3: , Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: , VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/IO seen by VSE. If msec/IO (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results. - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os via VM Monitors e.g. RTM/ESA, VMPRF) - make sure that (real) device is not throttled QUERY TMROTLE If the msec/IO delta seems to stem from more CP-time per I/O, - check the SIE (I/O) assist status - check the VM CC translation status/stats Refer e.g. to the document 'IBM VSE/ESA VM Guest Performance Considerations' To Check 5:	<pre>To Check 67: (Check channel programs (READ &amp; WRITE) (use of ECKD (caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs Data D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D</pre>
To Check 3: ,, Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: ,, VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/IO seen by VSE. If msec/IO (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results. - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os via VM Monitors e.g. RTM/KEA, VMPRF) - make sure that (real) device is not throttled QUERY THROTLE If the msec/IO delta seems to stem from more CP-time per I/O, - check the DASD definitions in VM (FPM, PPM and DEDs) - check the SIE (I/O) assist status Refer e.g. to the document 'IBM VSE/ESA VM Guest Performance Considerations' To Check 5: ,, Refer to official S/W APARS/PTFs and to H/W	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) : use of ECKD : caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWs <b>Use SDAID to trace V/O operations</b>
To Check 3: , Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for 'RDF tracks'). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: , VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/IO seen by VSE. If msec/IO (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results. - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os via VM Monitors e.g. RTM/ESA, VMPRF) - make sure that (real) device is not throttled QUERY TMROTLE If the msec/IO delta seems to stem from more CP-time per I/O, - check the SIE (I/O) assist status - check the VM CC translation status/stats Refer e.g. to the document 'IBM VSE/ESA VM Guest Performance Considerations' To Check 5:	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) : use of ECKD : caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWB : Data D output Tecuu-tape TRACE 10 UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE 10 UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) READY STARTSD ////////////////////////////////////
To Check 3: , Total Cache Hit ratios should be >80% (ROT) For certain individual types of I/O requests it can approach even 100% (e.g. update or format WRITEs for "RDF tracks"). Add more cache if this is the problem. See 'Cache Size Considerations' in IORT Component Analysis part To Check 4: , VM settings of I/O relevance These settings affect the msec/IO seen by VSE. If msec/IO (and/or number of I/Os) seen from VM differs from earlier results, - make sure that VM MDC (minidisk caching) is in effect the same way as before QUERY MDC MDI cuu (check MDC hit ratios and remaining number of physical I/Os via VM Monitors e.g. RTM/ESA, VMPRF) - make sure that (real) device is not throttled QUERY THROTTLE If the msec/IO delta seems to stem from more CP-time per I/O, - check the DASD definitions in VM (FPM, PPM and DEDs) - check the VM CW translation status/stats Refer e.g. to the document 'IBM VSE/ESA VM Guest Performance Considerations' To Check 5: , Refer to official S/W APARs/PTFs and to H/W EC-level patches For first APAR overview, refer to this document.	To Check 6/7: , Check channel programs (READ & WRITE) : use of ECKD : caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWB : Caching bits/mask byte in the DX CCWB : Use SDAID to trace I/O operations SDAID OUTDEY T=cuu-tape TRACE 10 UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) TRACE SCH UNIT=cuu OUTP=(TOD CCWD=16) READY STARTSD ////////////////////////////////////

Checks in case of I/O Degradation	I/O Tuning Logical Flow
Checks in case of I/O Degradation (cont'd)	I/O Tuning and Rules-of-Thumb (ROT)
To Check 11:	Any values for ROTs hold e.g. for a 15 min peak load
" Check device utilizations Refers to logical volumes and/or physical HDDs, depending on the type of I/O subsystem.	A) Reduce #I/Os
Is only relevant for concurrent access from multiple partitions. <b>High Device Service Time (DST):</b> Caused usually by a too high I/O rate to a logical/physical volume. > Reduce the number of I/Os to such files (I/O Blocking) > Relocate the files to another volume/HDD <b>High IOSQ Time in VSE Channel Queue:</b> Caused by a too high logical device utilization, seen from VSE. > Proceed as above > Use PRTYIO settings if device utilization cannot be reduced and Online I/O has to be preferred Refer to - 'YSE/ZEA Workload Balancing' in the VSE/ESA VI.3/1.4 doc, - 'PRTYIO Usage Hints' in 'Part D' of this document.	<ul> <li>Apply Data In Memory (DIM)</li> <li>Discussed in the base documents</li> <li>B) Check I/O response times</li> <li>Use a VSE performance monitor (best), or SIR SMF</li> <li>Check IORT values</li> <li>Proceed in case of 'High Msec/ID' as described before</li> <li>C) Check device utilizations (multi-thread only)</li> <li>Check device utilizations from the monitor runs</li> <li>Balance device utilizations and/or increase number of devices</li> <li>ROT: Any (physical or logical) device utilization should not permanently exceed 30%</li> </ul>
WKHJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         A.18           I/O Tuning Logical Flow	WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         A.19           I/O Configuration Rules
	Remark         Nore         • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.20	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.21

#### ESA I/O Channel Subsystem ESA I/O Channel Subsystem ... ESA I/O Channel Subsystem **ESA I/O Performance Benefits** All channel path related data is handled by H/W , (Channel Subsystem CSS, or IOS) Reduced utilization of channels Mostly for ESCON Performance/capacity functions ... Higher I/O capacity for a given number of channels **Dynamic Path Selection (DPS)** Any path out of up to 8 associated with the target device can be selected to initiate an I/O. Better I/O service times at same I/O-rate per channel The CSS uses a rotation order for the initiation of ${\rm I}/{\rm O}$ requests to a device. Also you can select a preferred path which the CSS always tries first. Reduced tuning/balancing requirements in case of channel bottlenecks In S/370-mode, only up to 2 alternate channel paths could be defined, but this had to be done in the operating system itself. Also, the selected channels had to be consecutive, what is not required for the CSS. **Performance Results** ... Since the CSS knows and handles the status of all channels, there are no cases of 'channel busy' as they existed for $5/370\ 1/0.$ with the Channel Subsystem are history and documented e.g. in 'MVS/XA I/O Performance Considerations'. For example: At 33% channel utilization, the use of DPR provided an 11 msec (or 39%) improvement in the I/O response time. Using DPR also permitted the channels to run at about 20% (absolute) higher utilization and still maintain an I/O response time between 17 and 21 msec (3380 Std). **Dynamic Path Reconnect (DPR)** Any channel path out of up to 8 can be selected to perform the actual transfer of data, not just the path the operation was started. An RPS miss (if non-cached) only occurs when all eligible paths are busy. Actual performance benefits depend on: Channel path utilization Number of channel paths Setup of the device paths from the control unit to the devices with DLSE (Device Level Select Enhanced, provides 4 independent and simultaneous data transfer paths to a single DASD string) Relative I/O intensiveness of a workload Processor type On S/370, the data had to be transferred on the same channel on which the I/O operation was initiated. > ESA operating system can handle different paths for a single I/O Support of up to 256 channels/CHPIDs S/370-mode only allowed up to 16 physical channels WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.22 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM A.23 **General ESCON Statements** ECKD vs CKD Channel Programs **Big Functional Benefits** Distance PART B. Cabling **Configuration flexibility** ECKD vs CKD Channel Dynamic (=logical) connections between ESCON channels and CUs via - EMIF and/or - ESCON director(s) Programs > Savings of channels, cables and CU channel ports **Performance Benefits** by higher data transfer rate What is ECKD? Ù are limited, since the 'msec per I/O' only partly depend on the channel transfer rate Why ECKD? Ù are more visible if effectively cached **Performance Relevance** Ù would also show up with fast (uncached) devices Ù Scope of Usage by VSE directly show up if channel becomes a capacity bottleneck More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use Ù allow less channels if ESCON Ù ADDing Disk Devices Please also distinguish between 17 MB/sec channels and 10 MB/sec channels (e.g. elder 9121s) WK/HJU 2001-07-15 A.24 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM Copyright IBM B.1

#### ECKD Basics

to optimally use new device attachments/devices

Predictive, to avoid CCW chaining in gap

A channel command (CCW) architecture

What is ECKD?

Ù

#### ECKD Basics ...

Mby	ECKD?
VVIIV	EGAD

For more info refer to 'VSE/ESA 1.2 Performance Considerations', Chart PB06

- Ù Avoid performance degradation for WRITE CCWs (if uncached) for non-synchronous attachments (ESCON)
  - 1 Maintain device performance of todays DASDs i.e. no performance improvement vs CKD
- Use specific performance beneficial new ECKD commands Read Track, or more multi-track CCWs)
  - 1 Performance improvements possible
- Provide performance optimal device support of devices with increased device data rates
  - 1 Exploit fast, non-sync attached devices optimally
- Allow optimal S/W control of cached subsystems

Allow 'smaller' gaps on track (higher track exploitation) No need anymore for command chaining of CCWs on the fly while gap is passing by.

B.3

### ECKD Usage in VSE/ESA

#### VSE/ESA Components using Native ECKD

Release details are discussed later

Native ECKD is used by VSE/ESA only if device type is '6E'

For all type of non-synchronous and/or cached DASD attachments, VSE should run with 'device type' '6E'!

6E: ECKD channel programs (3380, 3390, 9345, RAMAC, ID) 6C: CKD channel programs (3380 only)

For 3390s and 9345s, VSE/ESA uses native ECKD channel programs, independent of the attachment.

See also the discussions to this subject in the RAMAC Array Subsystem section

```
If any vendor product does not yet use optimal ECKD channel programs, contact the vendors. They are aware of this need.
Naturally, this also applies to IBM products
```

Do NOT ADD devices as ',SHR', except if required for sharing data across VSEs

Copyright IBM

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

B.4

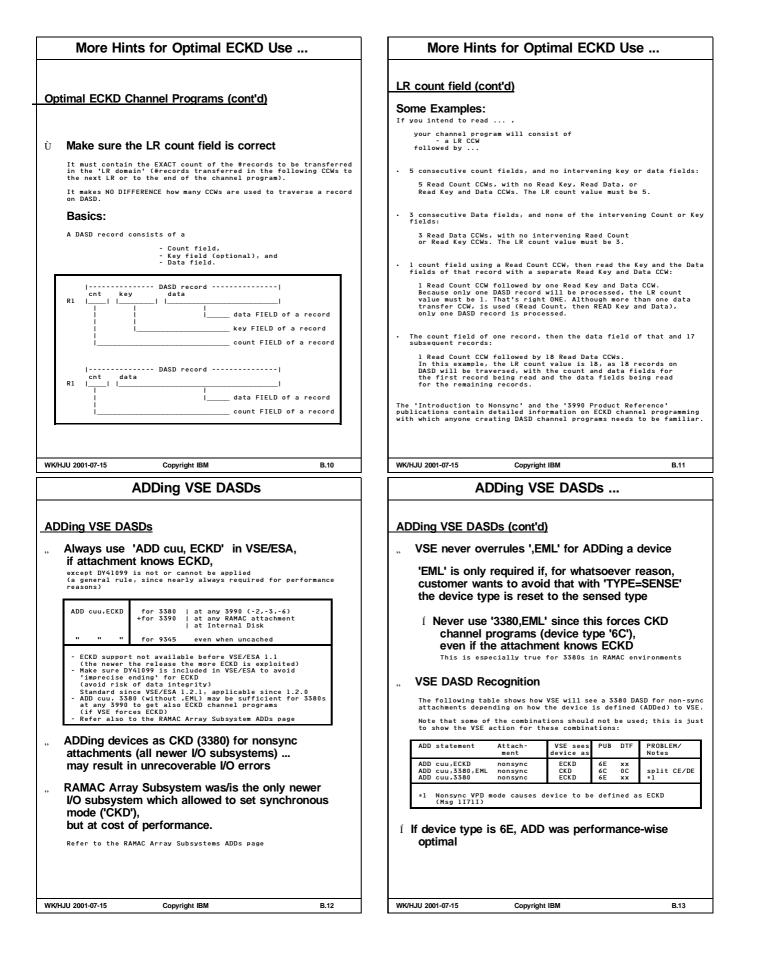
B.5

DEFINE EXTENT CCW (DX, hex63) Defines extent limits on operations that follow Provides block-size value Specifies cache controls Ù LOCATE RECORD CCW (LR, hex47) Specifies - Location of first record (incl. sector value) - Number of records - Type of operation Ù Optimal for 'Non-synchronous operation' Data are transferred from device to real storage in a stepwise fashion, at individual speeds New commands **READ TRACK** Ù More multi-track CCWs 1 ECKD channel programs are handled on an extent basis This is transparent to S/W. in CKD channel programs each CCW is handled independently WK/HJU 2001-07-15 B.2 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM Copyright IBM ECKD for Performance Reasons ECKD channel programs required performance-wise ... VSE/VSAM Whenever the DASD attachment is non-sync and LIBRarian and FETCH/LOAD ,, ,, w/o write cache FAST COPY ,, Page Manager ,, 3380s & 3390s at ESCON, 9345s Lock Manager ,, Whenever a DASD cache must be optimally Hardcopy file ,, ... exploited/controlled by S/W - 3990-3, 3990-6 cached subsystems, incl. RAMAC Array DASD, 9390s (\*) - 9345 cached subsystems - RAMAC Array Subsystem (\*) RVA, RSA Internal Disk Notes (\*) Even newer cache implementations benefit from bit settings <u>Notes</u> Caching bits and their functions are described in ,, the part 'DASD Caching in General' The newer the VSE/ESA release, the more cache ,, performance functions are exploited **Functional Reason for ECKD** Products and ECKD Nonsync attachments (split CE and DE) The CU causes the channel to present split CE and DE. Not new in general, but not exploited for DASD WRITEs in the past  $\rm \acute{1}$  Potential data integrity exposure if ADDed as CKD (exception conditions reported at DE, but application has made no precautions to force to be posted only at DE time)

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

Conversion Routine 9. Dynamic CKDECKD Conversion routine is provided by the VSEESA Supervisor     Provide data is a statistic in the Statistic international i	ECKD Usage in VSE/ESA	More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use
Conversion Routine         a. Dynamic CKD/ECKD Conversion Routine is provided by the VSEESAS Supervisor         Statistical conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs         a. The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs         Statistical convert all types of channel programs         A. How SE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs         B. How SE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs         A. How SE CKD/ECKD conversion routine reserver ("Research")         B. How SE CKD/ECKD Conversion routine reserver ("Research")		More Hints for Optimal ECKD Channel Programs
<ul> <li>Dynamic CKD/ECKD Conversion Routine is provided by the VSEESAS Supervisor</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of conversion routine cannot convert all types of conversion routine never can set individual caching bits correctly/optimally</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The vSE conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The vSE conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The vSE conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused individual caching bits with the set is at strate the set is at the set i</li></ul>	Conversion Routine	No ECKD channel program can/should be setup for a specific I/O
<ul> <li> Pre-status, yue, di, hu VECKER, Description courted in the first status of the status o</li></ul>		only available on a specific (newer) I/O subsystem, this can be treated separately on top, after having dynamically checked the availability before usage.
Unter stream.         But         1       The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs         Ly. attracting of the description of the descrit description of the description of the description of	For device type 6E, the VSE/ESA CKD/ECKD conversion routine attempts to convert CKD channel programs into ECKD	Any chance for an improvement should be taken, i.e. all settings should be done always, if of potential benefit somewhere
<ul> <li>i The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot convert all types of channel programs.</li> <li><i>G. Specify the caching bits correctly(optimally</i></li> <li><i>G. Specify the caching bits correctly(optimally</i></li> <li><i>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</i></li> <li><i>Workul 2004-07-15</i></li> <li><i>Workul 2004-07-15</i></li> <li><i>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused</i></li> <li><i>Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</i></li> <li><i>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused</i></li> <li><i>Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</i></li> <li><i>Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</i><th></th><th>Define Extent (DX) Hints:</th></li></ul>		Define Extent (DX) Hints:
<ul> <li>1 The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine cannot conversion routine cannot conver all types of Log hadrystee submarks L/2 interface and types</li></ul>	But	
<ul> <li>Wold 2014/F.18 CPC of a base program (control)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused The second related to ECKD Use</li> <li>Wold 2014/F.16 CPC and the program (control)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused The second related to ECKD Use</li> <li>More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use</li> <li>Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (control)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused The second related to ECKD Use</li> <li>Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (control)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused The second related to ECKD Use</li> <li>Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (control)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused The second related to ECKD Use</li> <li>Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (control)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused The second related to ECKD Use</li> <li>Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (control)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused The second related to a restriction of the second related to the second program (control to be availed to the second related to the second related to the second program (control to be second related to the second related to the second program (control to be second related to the second related to the second program (control to be second related to the second related to the second program (control to be second related to the second related to the second program (control to be second related to the second related to the second program (control to be second related to the second related to the second program (control to the second related to the second related to the second program (control to the second related to the second related to the second program (control to the second related to the second related to the second program (control to the second related to the second related to the second program (control to the second related to the second related to the seco</li></ul>		
Worker Programs are called a block with a bit 7 to 04         With the call CKD channel programs can be fully translated to ECKD         1 Not all CKD channel programs can be fully translated to ECKD         1 The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits         Nore States         1 More VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits         Nore States         1 More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use         Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         1 Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused         The states fills and the body for the follower board at the control of the control of the board at the control of the board at the control of the control of the board at the control of the		
<ul> <li>A Note All CKD channel programs can be fully translated to ECKD</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>1</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>2</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>2</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>2</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>2</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>2</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>2</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>2</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>2</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>3</sup> The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li><sup>4</sup> Would 2014718</li> <li><sup>4</sup> Copyright BM</li> <li><sup>4</sup> Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused</li> <li><sup>1</sup> The VSE first set first set in the set individual caching in the VSE for the</li></ul>	This is to be assumed if CCB Byte 3 Bit 7 is ON	Set RECord caching only if really cache unfriendly. Set SEQuential caching if sequential.
<ul> <li>i Not all CKD channel programs can be fully translated to ECKD</li> <li>i Not all CKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>The vset of the set of the set</li></ul>		
<ul> <li>translated to ECKD</li> <li>The VSE CKDECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>"In VSE CKDECKD conversion routine never can set individual caching bits</li> <li>"In VSE control for all states of the data format (RDF), if record format is fixed</li> <li>"In VSE control for all states of the data format (RDF), if record format is fixed</li> <li>"Specify Regular Data Format (RDF), if record format is fixed</li> <li>"Specify Regular Data Format (RDF), if record format is fixed</li> <li>"Specify Regular Data Format (RDF), if record format is fixed</li> <li>"Specify Regular Data Format (RDF), if record format is fixed</li> <li>"More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use</li> <li>Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused</li> <li>"It is is bort field exercisity in Raits of 100 subsysteme field personnel program</li> <li>Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</li> <li>"It is from the avertify the setting for a subset field for setting byte is from the setting for a subset field for a subset field for subset field for a subset for all states of 100 subsetters</li> <li>"Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)</li> <li>Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</li> <li>"It is from the setting for a subset field for subset field for a subset for all with the setting for all with</li></ul>	í Not all CKD shannal programa san ha fullu	
<ul> <li>1 In VSE CKUP/CKUP conversion routine never can set individual caching bits.</li> <li>Prefer all a 18 the observation of the set of th</li></ul>		<ul> <li>ignored for all RAID-5/6 I/O subsystems</li> </ul>
Processing of the second program in the second program in the second program in the second program.       (°) Specify Regular Data Format (RDF), if record format is fixed         WKNUU 2001-07-45       Copyright IBM       B4         WKNUU 2001-07-45       Copyright IBM       B4         WKNUU 2001-07-45       Copyright IBM       B4         Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)       WKNUU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       B7         Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)       B4       WKNUU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       B7         Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)       B4       WKNUU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       B7         Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)       B4       WKNUU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       B7         Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)       General Hints:       (°) Whenever possible, maximise the amount of data in a single channel program.       (°) Whenever doing FORMAT-WRITEs, try to format full (cogical) track in a single channel program.         It is the second in the second second with the second with the second with the second with the second second with the second second with the second with the second with the second with the second with the second	$\rm \acute{1}$ The VSE CKD/ECKD conversion routine never can	(DX parameter list: Byte 1, Global Attributes, bit 6)
In VERTIAN DB ARED Conversion Routinet:         In VERTIAN DB ARED Conversion Routine:         In VERTIAN DB ARED	-	U Specify Regular Data Format (RDF), if record
(DK parameter list: byte 7, 610bil Attributes Extended,         (DK parameter list: byte 7, 610bil Attributes Extended,         (DK parameter list: byte 7, 610bil Attributes Extended,         (Dytimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         () Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused         This is beneficial expectably in R1D+5/6 1/0 subsysteme         () Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting         () Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting         () Dytimate CXD Channel programs, incont is used to be control to the state byte 5, should be 1, i.e. of an data field)         () Dytered used with a solid or a control to be control to the state byte 5, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of a model of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i.e. of the control to the control to the state byte 3, should be 1, i	'Smarter CKD/ECKD Conversion Routine'	
WXHUU 2001-07-15       Capyright IBM       B.4         More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use         0       Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused       More Hints for Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)       More Signature of the state of the state of the state for the state of		(DX parameter list: Byte 7, Global Attributes Extended,
More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use         Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         ©       Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused         This is beneficial essectably in RAD-5/6 (1/0 subsystems)       Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         ©       Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused         This is beneficial essectably in RAD-5/6 (1/0 subsystems)       Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         ©       Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting       Whenever possible, maximise the amount of data in a single channel program         The write control hits should be a restrictive as possible       Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         ©       Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting       ************************************		
More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use         Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         ©       Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused         This is beneficial essectably in RAD-5/6 (1/0 subsystems)       Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         ©       Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused         This is beneficial essectably in RAD-5/6 (1/0 subsystems)       Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         ©       Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting       Whenever possible, maximise the amount of data in a single channel program         The write control hits should be a restrictive as possible       Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)         ©       Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting       ************************************		
<ul> <li>Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)</li> <li>Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused This is beneficial especially in RAID-54 1/0 subsystems (DX parameter list: byte 7, clobal Attributes Extended; bit 5, should be 1, 1.e. 6s in data field)</li> <li>Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting The Write Control bits should be as restrictive as socialis (DX parameter list: byte 8, maximise the amount of data in a single channel program. The Write Control bits should be as restrictive as socialis (DX parameter list: byte 8, maximise the amount of data in a single channel program. (D Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting The Write Control bits should be as restrictive as socialis (DX parameter list: byte 8, maximise the amount of data (DX parameter list: byte 8, maximise the amount of data (DX parameter list: byte 8, maximise the amount of data (DX parameter list: byte 8, maximise the amount of data (D Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting (D For pure RAB channel programs) (D for an ercond subsystems, a lost (Provolution (D) Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential VOS The settent lists cloud be contant (c as big snough) as prevential is in compared developed as and as an and the sectorial current CM program. (Provolution and the upper extent limit specified in the (Provolution and the upper extent limit sp</li></ul>		
<ul> <li><b>b</b> Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused This is beneficial especially in RHID-76 1/0 subsystems (b) parameter list: boold be 1, i.e. 0s in data field)</li> <li><b>c</b> Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting The write Control bits should be as restrictive as possible (fX parameter list: byte 0, Mask Byte, Sits 0-1 "WRITE Control"). The combination '11' must be avoided, sine it may force 'Bypass (c) Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential VOS The settert list: should be constant (= as hig enough) as porter tills in some non-cached subsystems, a lost the settert list: should be constant (= as hig enough) as porter tills in some dot constant (= as hig enough) as current COM program.</li> </ul>	More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use	More Hints for Optimal ECKD Use
<ul> <li>C proof y claimed a specially is while of its invested.</li> <li>This special select the DX Mask Byte setting</li> <li>C Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</li> <li>The write control bits should be as restrictive as possible (DS parameter list) byte 0, hask Byte, Bits 01 'WRITE outrol').</li> <li>The combination '11' must be avoided, since it may force 'Bypass Cache' for some types of 1/0 subsystems.</li> <li>U Se a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program</li> <li>This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost</li> <li>C Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential VOS</li> <li>The stand is should be constant (- as big anough) as possible, since optimal clautered) de staging and sequential program.</li> <li>C Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential VOS</li> <li>The stand is should be constant (- as big anough) as possible, since optimal clautered) de staging and sequential program.</li> <li>C Specify always the same DX extent limits possified in the current COV program.</li> </ul>	Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)	Optimal ECKD Channel Programs (cont'd)
<ul> <li>C proof y claimed a specially is while of its invested.</li> <li>This special select the DX Mask Byte setting</li> <li>C Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</li> <li>The write control bits should be as restrictive as possible (DS parameter list) byte 0, hask Byte, Bits 01 'WRITE outrol').</li> <li>The combination '11' must be avoided, since it may force 'Bypass Cache' for some types of 1/0 subsystems.</li> <li>U Se a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program</li> <li>This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost</li> <li>C Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential VOS</li> <li>The stand is should be constant (- as big anough) as possible, since optimal clautered) de staging and sequential program.</li> <li>C Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential VOS</li> <li>The stand is should be constant (- as big anough) as possible, since optimal clautered) de staging and sequential program.</li> <li>C Specify always the same DX extent limits possified in the current COV program.</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>in a single channel program</li> <li>is a single channel program</li> <li>is</li></ul>	ù Specify Standard Record 0, if R0 is not misused	General Hints:
<ul> <li>Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</li> <li>Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting</li> <li>The Write Control bits should be as restrictive as possible (DX parameter list: Byte 0, Mask Byte, Bits 0-1 WRITE Control').</li> <li>The combination '11' must be avoided, since it may force 'Bypass.</li> <li>Use 01 for pure READ channel program,</li> <li>to parsit undate writes only</li> <li>for all WRITE secopt WRITE HA and WRITE R0</li> <li>Use a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program</li> <li>This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost revolution</li> <li>Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential I/Os</li> <li>The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as possible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential prossible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential prossible wind at the upper extent limit specified in the current CCW program.</li> </ul>	(DX parameter list: Byte 7, Global Attributes Extended,	
<ul> <li>The Write Control bits should be as restrictive as possible (DX parameter list: Byte 0. Mask Byte, Bits 0-1 'WRITE Control'). The combination 'll' must be avoided, since it may force 'Bypass Tache' for some types of 1/0 subsystems.</li> <li>Use 01 for pure RED channel programs, 10 to permit uodate writes only 00 for all WRITEs except WRITE HA and WRITE R0</li> <li>Use a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost revolution</li> <li>Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential I/Os</li> <li>The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as pre-staging may end at the upper extent limit specified in the current CCW program.</li> <li>Whenever doing FORMAT-WRITEs, try to format full (logical) tracks</li> <li>Whenever doing FORMAT-WRITEs, try to format full (logical) tracks</li> <li>Whenever doing FORMAT-WRITEs, try to format full (logical) tracks</li> <li>avoids padding rest-of-track in specific cases</li> <li>Locate Record (LR) Hints:</li> <li>Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential I/Os</li> <li>The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as pre-staging may end at the upper extent limit specified in the current CCW program.</li> </ul>	U Careful select the DX Mask Byte setting	- Use multi-track CCWs or
<ul> <li>(logical) tracks</li> <li>(logical) tracks</li> <li>avoids padding rest-of-track in specific cases</li> <li>avoids padding rest-of-track in specific cases</li> <li>avoids padding rest-of-track in specific cases</li> <li>Use a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program</li> <li>This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost</li> <li><b>Specify always the same DX extent limits for</b> sequential <i>I/Os</i></li> <li>The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as prostible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential pre-staging may end at the upper extent limit specified in the current CCW program.</li> </ul>	The Write Control bits should be as restrictive as possible	
<ul> <li>Use 01 for pure READ channel programs, 10 to permit update writes only 00 for all WRITES except WRITE HA and WRITE R0</li> <li><b>Ù</b> Use a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost revolution</li> <li><b>Ù</b> Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential I/Os The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as possible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential processible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential processible).</li> <li>For cached I/O subsystems the sector value should have no impact - for I/O subsystems doing full track staging only (RVA)</li> </ul>	The combination 'll' must be avoided, since it may force 'Bypass	
<ul> <li>D0 for all WRITES except WRITE HA and WRITE R0</li> <li> <b>Ù</b> Use a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost         revolution     </li> <li> <b>Ò</b> Specify always the same DX extent limits for         sequential I/Os The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as         possible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential         posrible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential         proceeding and sequential         in the         urrent CCW program.     </li> </ul>	Use 01 for pure READ channel programs,	- avoids padding rest-of-track in specific cases
<ul> <li>Ù Use a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program         This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost revolution         <b>Ù</b> Specify always the same DX extent limits for sequential I/Os         The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as possible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential program.         <b>Ù</b> Carled I/O subsystems the sector value should have no impact - for READ or WRITE hits extend the upper extent limit specified in the current CCW program.     </li> </ul>		Locate Record (LR) Hints:
<ul> <li>This avoids, at least in some non-cached subsystems, a lost revolution</li> <li>Descrify always the same DX extent limits for sequential I/Os</li> <li>The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as possible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential pre-staging may end at the upper extent limit specified in the current CCW program.</li> <li>No sector value ('FF') or a wrong sector value may result in higher utilizations for channel and/or CU in case of non-cached I/O subsystems.</li> <li>This may also apply to some elder cached I/O subsystems.</li> <li>This problem may also occur, if in CKD channel programs no RPS is used, or wrong sector value should have no impact - for READ or WRITE hits</li> <li>To subsystems doing full track staging only (RVA)</li> </ul>	Ù Use a single DX CCW in an ECKD channel program	
<ul> <li>Description of the same DX extent limits for sequential I/Os</li> <li>The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as possible, since optimal (Clustered) de-staging and sequential processing and sequential processing and sequential in the current CCW program.</li> </ul>		No sector value ('FF') or a wrong sector value may result in higher utilizations for channel and/or CU in case of non-cached I/O
Sequential VOS The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as possible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential pre-staging may end at the upper extent limit specified in the current CCW program. This problem may also occur, if in it ckb cluster programs no kr3 is used, or wrong sector values are given. For cached I/O subsystems the sector value should have no impact - for READ or WRITE hits - for I/O subsystems doing full track staging only (RVA)	ù Specify always the same DV extent limits for	
The extent limits should be constant (= as big enough) as possible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential pre-staging may end at the upper extent limit specified in the current CCW program for READ or WRITE hits - for I/O subsystems doing full track staging only (RVA)		This problem may also occur, if in CKD channel programs no RPS is used, or wrong sector values are given.
WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         B.8         WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         B.9	possible, since optimal (clustered) de-staging and sequential pre-staging may end at the upper extent limit specified in the	- for READ or WRITE hits
WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         B.8         WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         B.9		
	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM B.8	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM B.9



### ADDing VSE DASDs ...

#### Potential Vendor Program Deficiency

" Some vendor products are/were sensitive to the device type code

Some programs look for a '6C' in the PUB and may not recognize the '6E' that VSE will place there for ECKD devices.

Some programs look e.g. for a 'OC' in the DTF and may not recognize the 'DE' for 3380 ECKD. Similarly, this also applies for other ECKD DTF device type codes like 'O4' for 9365, '26' for 3390-1, '27' for 3390-2, '24' for 3390-3, '32' for 3390-9.

" Some vendor products use the 6C indication to identify 3380 device type for track capacity info

VSE has a GETVCE service that can be used for this, eliminating the need to interpret the PUB content.

- > Device type 6C is disadvantageous for any nonsync ECKD DASD, be it real devices or RAMAC emulated devices, cached or uncached
- Some vendor products may not be able to handle separate presentation of Channel End w/o Device End
- VSE will put 6C in the PUB for a device for a 3380 ADD statement with EML:

#### ADD cuu,3380,EML

should be only used as a temporary circumvention

- ADD cuu 3380,EML will result in degraded performance, by using

   device type '6C' (0C in DTF)
   and CKD channel programs, not ECKD
- > Customer should contact the vendor to request a fix to recognize 6E (for device type identification and/or track capacity calculation), both for all nonsync real and RAMAC emulated devices

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### **Principal DASD Cache Benefits**

#### Principal DASD Cache Benefits

#### **Ù** Significantly faster msec/IO

Fast 'DASD response' in case of a cache hit

 > The higher the hit ratio, the better is performance:
 - READ hits via Basic Functions or Record Caching
 - WRITE hits only with Extended Functions and non-volatile storage

 Faster processing of I/O intensive workloads (faster user response times or batch elapsed times)

### **Ù** Dependencies

Workload characteristics

- I/O intensity
- R/W ratio
- Access patterns

Cache functions supported

- Basic Caching
- Extended Functions
- ....
- Configuration dependencies
  - CPU - I/O configuration
  - Cache size
  - ...
  - ...

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### DASD Caching in General

PART C.

### DASD Caching in General

**Overview** 

Ù DASD Cache

Functions

Strategies

Benefits

Statistics

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM

#### C.1

### **DASD Cache Terms**

Some terms:

B.14

C.2

# 'Staging' Loading of a cache with data from DASD (DASD/Cache transfer)

**'De-staging'** Writing of cache data to DASD (Cache/DASD transfer)

### 'Rest-of-track staging'

(General amount of data to be staged for Track Caching) The unit of transfer from DASD to cache generally is the requested record plus 'rest-of-track'.

Only if subsequently a lower indexed record of the same track is needed and not in the track slot ('front-end-miss'), the track is completed by reading all records not yet in cache. This is better than a pure track oriented strategy.

Rest-of-track staging does NOT elongate I/O response times for misses, since the staging of additional data is done after the I/O request is complete. It only occupies still the physical device and the device path, which may cause contention for other accesses.

On newer control units, also 'Record Caching' may be available

#### 'Least Recently Used, LRU'

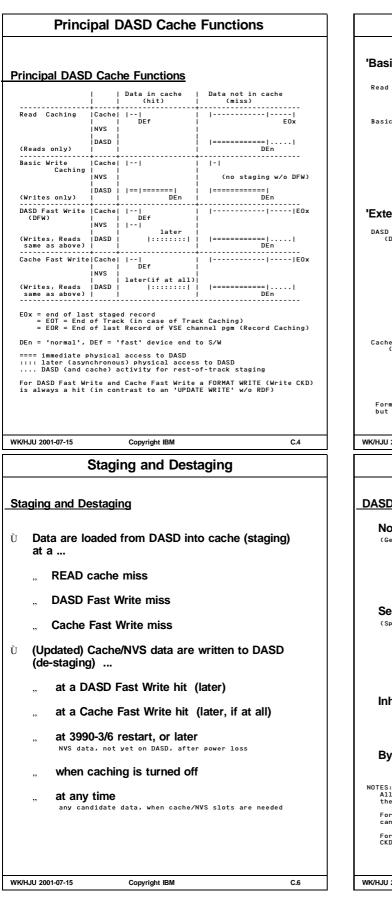
(General selection rule for the data to be de-staged) In general those data are discarded from cache, to which the latest access was the 'least recently used' of all 'tracks', i.e. which for the longest time has not been referenced.

An exception from this rule is SEQuential data, see later.

Copyright IBM

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

C.3



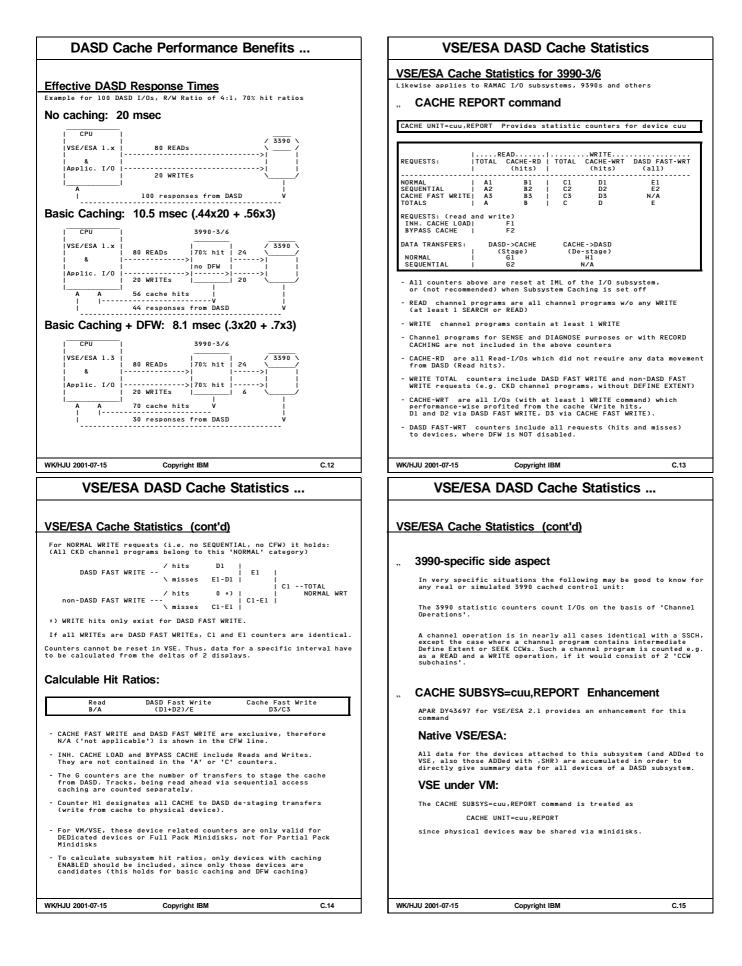
# Principal DASD Cache Functions ... 'Basic Cache Functions' Read (Only) Caching of READ operations. Caching In case of a read miss the track is read from DASD to cache and (except 3880–13) concurrently via the channel. rite Caching of WRITE operations. Caching a)If data in cache, cache and DASD update are started together, DE when DASD finished ('Forked Write'). - performance benefit if later on a READ finds the data in cache. Basic Write b) If data not in cache, record is written to DASD but NOT to cache. never causes cache load (staging). 'Extended Function Fast Write' DASD Fast Write For all write intensive files, full data integrity. (DFW) Can be set off by a bit in DEFINE EXTENT. a)If data in cache, cache updated and data saved in NVS with imme-diate DE. Physical write to DASD done only when required (may be a long time later) when a 'de-staging' occurs or when a 'commit' is requested in the PERFORM SUBSYSTEM FCT-CCW. b)If data not in cache b1) UPDATE WRITE (or READ) is done on/from DASD with late DE and cache is being loaded. b2) FORMAT is done in cache and NVS with imm.DE. Cache Fast Write Only for temporary data e.g. work files, which (CFW) need not reside on DASD. Data are lost in case of power failure. Can be set on by a bit in DEFINE EXTENT. Same as DASD Fast Write, but w/o NVS. Written to DASD only if 'de-staging' required or if it is disabled in the SET SUBSYSTEM MODE-CCW. Formally DFW and CFW can also be used for read channel programs, but then it is identical to Read Caching. WK/HJU 2001-07-15 C.5 Copyright IBM **DASD Cache Strategies DASD Cache Strategies** Normal (LRU) Caching (General Caching Strategy) Stages only rest-of-track into cache, replaces (de-stages) LRU track of whole cache. This is the standard way of caching, unless otherwise set by S/W in each individual CCW chain. Most appropriate for general access. Sequential Access Caching (Special Caching Strategy) Stages rest-of-track into cache plus subsequent full tracks. The 3990-3 pre-stages up to 5 tracks into the cache, the 3990-6 up to 1 cylinder (15 tracks). (Tracks accessed with Sequential Access Caching are sooner candidates for being de-staged). Appropriate for sequential file processing. Inhibit Cache Loading Does not allow to load any new tracks into the cache (avoids unnecessary load of data into cache). **Bypass Cache** Does not allow to use the cache at all. All S/W settings of these modes are done with special bits in the DEFINE EXTENT CCW and are valid only until end of chain. For CKD channel programs, only Normal Caching and DASD Fast Write can be used (no DEFINE EXTENT CCW available). For CKD to ECKD converted channel programs the same applies as for CKD (no caching bits are set in DEFINE EXTENT CCW).

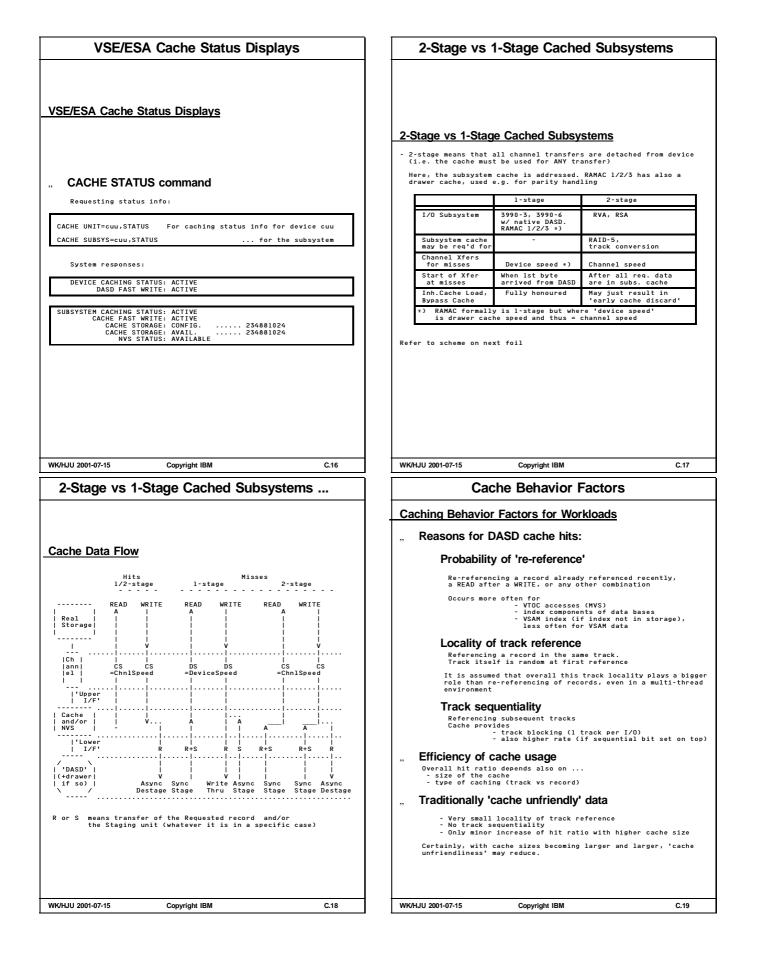
WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

C.7

	Cache Options Hierarchy
ASD Cache Strategies (cont'd)	Cache Ontions Hierarchy
Track Caching vs Record Caching	Cache Options Hierarchy
2 principal caching methods used:	1. Highest level:
Method Staging	H/W defaults
Track Caching Rest-of-track Traditional caching	
Record Caching (Access) Record only (Access) Record only for cache unfriendly data (3990–6, RAMAC Array Subs. RSA-2, 9390s)	2. Medium level:
- Adaptive Caching dynamically uses both methods	H/W defaults, altered by SET SUBSYSTEM MODE
Global Atttributes in DEFINE EXTENT CCW	- by VSE/ESA (native or guest)
Settings of bits 3–5 of Byte 1	- by VWESA
000 (CO) Normal Cache Replacement	
001 (C4) Bypass Cache BYP	3. Lowest level:
010 (C8) Inhibit Cache Load ICL	
011 (CC) Sequential Access SEQ 101 (D4) Record Access REC	Global Attribute Setting in DEFINE EXTENT (DX)
<pre>101 (D4) Record Access REC - Values in (Gg) are usually seen in SDAID I/O traces,</pre>	- DX not in CCW chain
if bits 6 and 7 (described below) are 0: DATA= MmGg (Mm= mask byte, Gg= Global Attributes byte)	- DX added by VM - DX used by VSE
<ul> <li>REC cannot/needs not be combined with other settings (no combination possible/required)</li> </ul>	
Settings of bit 6 of Byte 1	The scope of the lowest level is always a single CCW chain, whereas the other levels are on a 'permanent' basis.
0 Do not use Cache Fast Write 1 Use Cache Fast Write	
Settings of bit 7 of Byte 1	
0 Allow DASD Fast WRITE 1 Inhibit DASD Fast WRITE	
DASD Cache Performance Benefits	DASD Cache Performance Benefits
	DASD Cache Performance benefits
ASD Cache Performance Benefits	<ul> <li>DASD Cache Performance Benefits</li> <li>Calculation Details</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS	
ASD Cache Performance Benefits	<b>Ù</b> Calculation Details
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads	<ul> <li>Ù Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) IO</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os	<ul> <li>Ù Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) IO</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases)</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase	<ul> <li>Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) IO</li> <li>CPUT-time (same for all cases)</li> <li>CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os	<ul> <li>Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) IO</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>IO-time without 3990-3/6 cache:</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (basic caching only / with DFW) in the example below Imple Calculation	<ul> <li>Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) IO</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>IO-time without 3990-3/6 cache: IO = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>IO-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 800 x 20 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (basic caching only / with DFW) in the example below Imple Calculation Assumptions	<ul> <li>Ù Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>IO-time without 3990-3/6 cache: IO = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>IO-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 800 x 20 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> <li>IO-time with full caching (VSE/ESA 1.3)</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (basic caching only / with DFW) in the example below mple Calculation Assumptions - Any type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered - 12.5 sec total CPU-time on a 9221-150 - 4000 I/O operations to disk, un-overlapped, READ/WRITE ratio 4/J, i.e. 3200 READS, 800 WRITEs	<ul> <li>Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>IO-time without 3990-3/6 cache: IO = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>IO-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 800 x 20 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (basic caching only / with DFW) in the example below Imple Calculation Assumptions - Any type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered - 12.5 sec total CPU-time on a 9221-150 - 4000 I/O operations to disk, un-overlapped,	<ul> <li> <b>Ù Calculation Details</b> <ul> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases)</li> <li>CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>I0-time without 3990-3/6 cache:</li></ul></li></ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (basic caching only / with DFW) in the example below Imple Calculation Assumptions - Any type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered - 12.5 sec total CPU-time on a 9221-150 - 4000 I/O operations to disk, un-overlapped, READ/WRITE ratio 4/1, i.e. 3200 READS, 800 WRITES - 20 mscc average per DASD I/O, 3 mscc at cache hit	<ul> <li> <b>Ù Calculation Details</b> <ul> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases)</li> <li>CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>I0-time without 3990-3/6 cache:</li></ul></li></ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, fregores time faster Inproved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Ary type of DASD 1/05 Uto about 70% / 105% throughput increase back caching only with DFW2 In the example below Mere Education Mere Single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, Here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, Here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, Here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, Here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, Here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, Here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, Here single thread considered Pay type of batch job or transaction, Here single thread conside	<ul> <li> <b>Ù</b> Calculation Details         <ul> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>I0-time without 3990-3/6 cache: I0 = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>I0-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) I0 = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 800 x 20 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> <li>I0-time with full caching (VSE/ESA 1.3)</li> <li>I0 = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (19.2 sec)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (basic caching only / with DFW) in the example below In the example below Member Calculation Assumptions • Any type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered • 12.5 sec total CPU-time on a 9221-150 • 4000 I/O operations to disk, un-overlapped, READ/MERITE ratio 4/1, i.e. 3200 READs, 800 WITES • 20 mesc average per DASD I/O, 3 mesc at cache hit • 70% basic caching hit, 70% DFW hit ratio (very conservative) Calculation Results	<ul> <li> <b>Ù</b> Calculation Details         <ul> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>I0-time without 3990-3/6 cache: I0 = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>I0-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) I0 = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) = 4000 x 20 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> <li>I0-time with full caching (VSE/ESA 1.3)</li> <li>I0 = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) = 40.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (1.7 sec) = 32.4 sec</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD 1/05 Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (back caching only / with DFW) in the example below Mode Calculation Page Calculation Any type of batch job or transaction, here single thread considered 12.5 sec total CPU-time on a 9221-150 Atom of the sold of the conservative To make average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 20 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 2 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 21 msec average per DASD 1/0, 3 msec at cache hit 2	<ul> <li>Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>IO-time without 3990-3/6 cache: IO = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>IO-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> <li>IO-time with full caching (VSE/ESA 1.3)</li> <li>IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (1.7 sec) = 32.4 sec</li> <li>Ú Throughput Increase Sensitivity Factors</li> <li>Benefits of I/0 caching are</li> <li>higher if e.g more I/0 or more write intensive - more J/0 or more write intensive</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD I/Os Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (bacic caching only / with DFW) in the example below Imple Calculation Assumptions • Any type of batch job or transaction, • example below • 22.5 sec total CPU-time on a 9221-ISO • Any type of batch job or transaction, • exampte of batch job or transaction, • exampte of batch job or transaction, • exampte of log or transaction, • of transact	<ul> <li>Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>IO-time without 3990-3/6 cache: IO = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>IO-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> <li>IO-time with full caching (VSE/ESA 1.3)</li> <li>IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.3 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (1.7 sec) = 32.4 sec</li> <li>Throughput Increase Sensitivity Factors</li> <li>Benefits of I/0 caching are</li> <li>higher if e.g more I/0 or more write intensive - processor faster</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Virtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, if response time faster Improved elapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD 1/0s Up to about 70% / 105% throughput increase (basic caching only / with DFW) in the example below <b>Example Calculation</b> Passed to transaction, here single thread considered 12.5 sec total CPU-time on a 9221-150 12.5 sec total CPU-time on a 9221-150 2.5 sec total CPU-time time on a 9221-150 3.5 caching bit 2.5 sec 80.0 sec 92.5 sec Base 1.0 3.5 caching 12.5 sec 41.9 sec 54.4 sec 41% 1.7 3.5 sec 41.7 3.5 sec 41.9 sec 54.4 sec 41%	<ul> <li>Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>IO-time without 3990-3/6 cache: IO = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>IO-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> <li>IO-time with full caching (VSE/ESA 1.3)</li> <li>IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (1.7 sec) = 32.4 sec</li> <li><b>Ú</b> Throughput Increase Sensitivity Factors</li> <li>Benefits of I/0 caching are higher if e.g more I/0 or more write intensive - removing a device bottleneck</li> </ul>
ASD Cache Performance Benefits Reduction of virtual space requirements for CICS Wirtual storage for a transaction is released earlier, Intrace delapsed times for I/O intensive loads Any type of DASD 1/0s Uto about 70% / 105% throughput increase basic caching only / with DFW) In the example below Mode Calculation Part below Part be	<ul> <li>Calculation Details</li> <li>Elapsed Time ET = CPUT + (unoverlapped) I0</li> <li>CPU-time (same for all cases) CPUT = 12.5 sec</li> <li>IO-time without 3990-3/6 cache: IO = 4000 x 20 msec = 80 sec</li> <li>IO-time with basic caching only (VSE/ESA 1.2) IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 800 x 20 msec (16.0 sec) = 41.9 sec</li> <li>IO-time with full caching (VSE/ESA 1.3)</li> <li>IO = 0.3 x 3200 x 20 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (6.7 sec) + 0.7 x 3200 x 3 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 800 x 3 msec (19.2 sec) + 0.7 x 800 x 3 msec (1.7 sec) = 32.4 sec</li> <li>Throughput Increase Sensitivity Factors</li> <li>Benefits of I/0 caching are</li> <li>higher if e.g more I/0 or more write intensive - removing a device bottleneck - processor faster</li> <li>lower if e.g workload less I/0 dependent - multithread (several batch partit. or more transations)</li> </ul>





### **DASD Cache Bit Settings**

### DASD Cache Bit Settings for VSE/VSAM

Status as of VSE/ESA 1.3.x with the VSAM PTF for 3990-6 Enhancements (APAR/PTF DY43072/UD90363, dated 03/94).

TYPE OF ACCESS	CACHE HANDLING	REMARK
Write I/Os to WRITECHECK files	BYP	
Read I/Os to WRITECHECK files	Normal	
Replicated index set I/Os	REC	**
Noreplicated index set I/Os	Normal	
Complex channel programs (>1 LR domain, except for WRITECHECK) This covers mainly CA-splits and sequential read-ahead from highly scattered CAs	Normal	
Format-writes in SPEED (LOAD) mode (includes REPRO if SPEED)	SEQ	was BYP
Read I/Os on behalf of GET (SEQ,NUP,FWD) (e.g. REPRO for INFILE w/o ENV parameter) (includes DL/1 IMAGECOPY)	SEQ	ACB access
Write I/Os on behalf of PUT (SEQ,NUP,FWD) (if WRITECHECK not in effect) (e.g. REPRO for OUTFILE w/o ENV parameter) (includes DL/1 RECOVERY) (includes SQL/DS 3.5 Online ARCHIVE)	SEQ	ACB access
I/O for (DIR,NUP) or (DIR,UPD) for ESDSs opened with MACRF=(CNV,UBF), except BLDINDEX work files, includes - SQL/DS * - DL//I data component, UNLOAD/RELOAD	REC***	**
ALL OTHERS (includes REPRO if not SPEED)	Normal	
* For SQL/DS ARCHIVE use SQL/DS 3.5 with VSA	1 controlle	ed buffers
** REC means record cache, applicable to 3990 Internal Disk. Mostly superseded by adaptive larger cache sizes.		
*** Default since VSE/ESA 2.4 or DY44796 is Non Can be controlled via a SYSCOM bit.	rmal.	
<ul> <li>All I/Os specify 'Regular Data Format' RDF (except I/Os to a mixed data/sequence set of an IMBED KSDS)</li> <li>&gt; 3990-6 KSDSs should not be defined with IMBED</li> </ul>		

#### WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

C.20

C.22

### Some ECKD Caching Bits and VSE Releases

Some ECKD Caching Bits and VSE Releases

	SEQ (Sequential)	RDF (RegDataForm)	REC *6 (RecordCache)
Used by VSE/ SP 4.1 *1	- (!)	-	-
ESA 1.1 *1	x	-	-
ESA 1.2 *1	x	-	-
ESA 1.3/1.4	x	VSAM only	VSAM
ESA V2	x	x	VSAM
Beneficial for Cached 9340 DASD	yes	no *5	no *5
3990-3 +any DASD	yes	no *5	no *5
3990-6 +any DASD	yes∕no *2	yes	yes∕no ∗3
RAMAC Subsystem 9390/RAMAC 3	yes no *2	yes yes	no *3 no *3
RAMAC Virt.Array RAMAC Elec.Array RAMAC Scal.Array RAMAC Sc.Array-2/-3	yes/no *2 no *4 yes yes	no *5 no *4 no *5 yes	no *5 no *4 no *5 no *3
Multipr.Int. Disk	yes	no *4	yes
*1 No DFW available *2 3990-6 since 06/ can detect sequel *3 Dynamic record c: *4 Function not req *5 Function not ava: *6 Record caching ( less beneficial	96, RAMAC 3 an ntial access aching, contru uired/benefic ilable, bits used by VSAM	nd RAMAC Virtua (Sequential De olled via PTT o ial ignored for DL/1 and S0	al Array tect) or similar fct QL databases)
ECKD channel pro - required/highly control		for optimal (	cache
<ul> <li>often required to a degradation for not</li> </ul>			rmance

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

,

Copyright IBM

### DASD Cache Bit Settings ...

#### DASD Cache Bit Settings for VSE Utilities

UTILITY	FUNCTION	CACHE HANDLING	REMARK
VSAM B/R	BACKUP to tape/disk: Source disk READ Data Index	SEQ Normal	
	Target disk WRITE Data Index	SEQ * Normal	was BYP
	RESTORE from tape/disk: Source disk READ Data Index	SEQ Normal	
	Target disk WRITE Data Index	SEQ * Normal	was BYP
VSAM REPRO	Source file READ	SEQ	
	Target file WRITE: SPEED RECOVERY **	SEQ Normal	
LIBRarian	BACKUP/COPY/RESTORE/LIST/CATALOG (for data, not index blocks) + LIBRM GET/PUT		
	Source disk READ Target disk WRITE	SEQ SEQ	was ICL was BYP
FAST COPY	DUMP Volume/File (OPT=1) (OPT>1)	SEQ SEQ	was ICL
	RESTORE	SEQ	was BYP
	COPY Volume/File	SEQ/ICL	
DSF	INIT	BYP	
	he settings needs ECKD channel prog ns Inhibit Cache Load	rams	

- Settings apply to all cached I/O subsystems
- \* VSAM APAR/PTF DY43138/UD49025 uses SEQ (03/94)
- \*\* If cluster defined with RECOVERY or cluster not empty
- SEQ Setting for LIBR and FCOPY OPT>1 in VSE/ESA 2.3

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM

#### C.21

D.1

### I/O Response Time Component Analysis

### PART D.

I/O Response Time Component Analysis

The following are references for this subject

DASD Performance Analysis Using Modeling, by Thomas Beretvas, IBM Corporation, now Beretvas Performance Consulting Computer Measurement Group (CMG) Proceedings 86, 12/86, pp 749-760 A classic paper, still of interest for many reasons

MVS/ESA RMF Version 4 -Getting Started on Performance Management-LY33-9174-00, 12/93 OS/390 RMF Performance Management Guide, SC28-1951-00, 09/96 RMF oriented tuning books, refer to Chapter 5 'Analyzing I/O Activity'

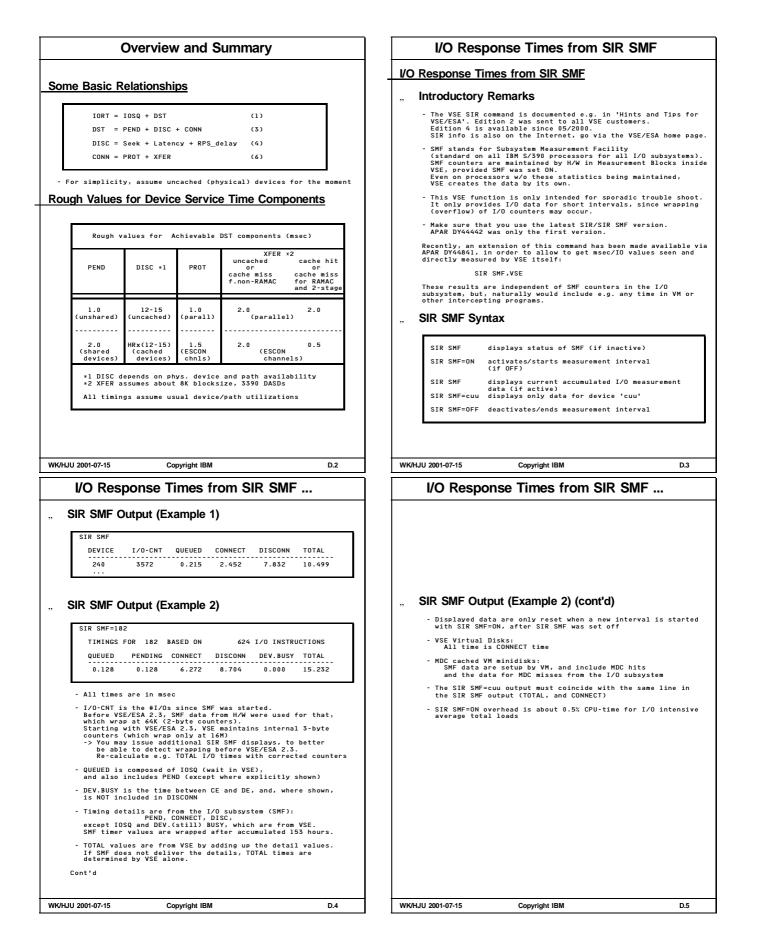
Understanding Cached DASD I/O Performance, by Thomas Beretvas, IBM Paper 10/91

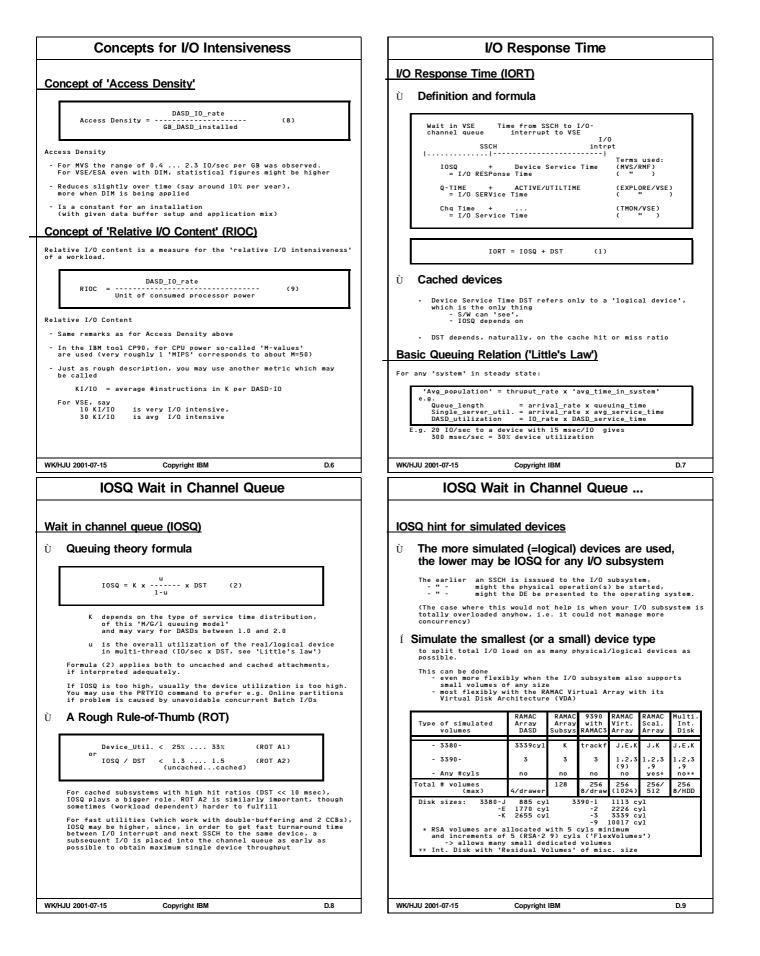
Balanced Systems and Capacity Planning, by R.T. Borchetta and Ray J. Wicks, IBM WSC Technical Bulletin, GG22–9299–04, 08/93, 125 pages

DASD Performance and Capacity Planning Class, by Thomas Beretvas, Beretvas Performance Consulting, Kingston, NY. Tel 914–339–5897 A very good, competent and extensive course on I/O subsystems for MVS. Includes also non-IBM devices.

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM





Device Service Time	Device Service Time
Device Service Time (DST)	
Device Service Time (DST)	<pre>Device Service Time for Cached Devices To simplify the formulae, PEND for cached devices is omitted here. If it should be required, add it like IOSQ when determining IORT Ù Traditional (1-stage) cached subsystems (Transfer of data across channel at device speed in case of miss) Effective Device Service Time is a weighted average: DST_eff = HR x DST_hit + MR x DST_miss (3a) DST_hit is equal to CONN = PROT+XFER, DST_miss is equal to DISC for uncached devices, see next foils. Since DST_miss is much higher than DST_hit (say 15.20 msec vs 3 msec); it is important to have a high hit ratio HR Ù C-stage cached subsystems (Data are first transferred to the subsystem cache 'stage 1'; and then transferred via the channel 'stage 2') (-&gt; Transfer via channel is always at cache speed, but starting only when all requested data are in cache) DST_eff = (PROT+XFER) + MR x DST_miss (3b) PROT is the protocol overhead time, XFER here is the transfer time out of cache [See CONNect time] DST_miss is the protocol overhead time, XFER here is the transfer time out of cache [See CONNect time] DST_miss is the protocol overhead time, XFER here is the transfer time out of cache [See CONNect time] DST_miss is the protocol overhead time, XFER here is the transfer time out of cache [See CONNect time] DST_miss is the protocol overhead time, XFER here is the transfer time out of cache [See CONNect time] DST_miss is the protocol overhead time, [See CONNect time] DST_miss is the protocol overhead time, often a dispute protocol overhead time, [See CONNect time] DST_miss is the protocol overhead time, often a dispute protocol overhead time, [See CONNect time] DST_miss is the protocol overhead time, often a dispute protocol overhead time, [See Connect time] DST_miss is the transfer time out of cache [See Connect time] DST_miss is the transfer time out of cache [See Connect time] [See C</pre>
<pre>&lt; e.g. 1 msec (unshared) PEND (ROT B) &lt; e.g. 2 msec (shared) Check PEND values contained in performance monitor outputs</pre>	DST_miss is harder to calculate, often a drawer cache is involved and RAID-5 interleaving to multiple physical HDDs, which usually have also a device level cache Again, a low miss ratio is important for fastest I/O
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM D.10	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM D.11
Device Disconnect Time	Device Disconnect Time
Device Disconnect Time Device Disconnect Time (DISC) DISC is that time of the duration of an I/O operation where (neglecting PEND) only the 'device' is busy w/o occupying the channel path DISC = Seek + Latency + RPS_delay (uncached) DISC = Geek + Latency + RPS_delay (uncached) DISC = f = MR x (cache_miss_resolution) (cached) (MR = overall miss ratio, Read+Write) Latency (except for sequential access) RPS_delay is individually n x rot_time (n=0,1,2), (if individual I/Os would be traced). $MRPS_delay = \frac{u}{1-u} \times rot_time (5)$ u is the probability that at an arbitrary instant the required 'path' is occupied by other activities. The most simple case of 1-way pathing for uncached devices, it holds u = channel utilization by other activities $Mrerage RPS_delay/rot_time (Aroy, 0.25 0.05 0.01) 50% 0.25 0.05 0.020  DISC ( e.g. 15 msec (ROT C1)$	Device Disconnect Time for Cached Devices

Device Connect Time	Device Connect Time
Device Connect Time (CONN)	
Definition and formula	Device CONNect time
CONN is the time of the I/O required to transfer the data across the channel path (including protocol overhead)	
	Ù Cached devices
	<ul> <li>PROT time plays a much bigger role due to cache hits and higher transfer speeds</li> </ul>
PROT is usually a very small time for initiating channel transfers (here non-overlapped part only). It varies with conditions (channel program, caching) and is higher for ESCON than for parallel channels (orders of magnitude is 1 to 1.5 msec, depending on situation and I/O subsystem). It improves with faster technology. May be roughly determined with performance monitors	<ul> <li>Data transfer across the channel is mostly at channel (=cache) speed, except for cache misses in traditional cached subsystems.</li> <li>CONNect times for (2-stage) cached ESCON I/O Subsystems</li> </ul>
via CONN, when XFER time is calculated. (Actually, a small part of the protocol-time PROT happens at the begin of the I/O initiation)	(times in msec)       Blocksize     MR=0     MR=0.1     MR=0.3
XFER depends on actual transfer speed across the channel path:	4.2K 1.75 1.83 1.98 8.5K 2.0 2.15 2.35 12.7K 2.25 2.48 2.93
XFER = Blocksize/Xfer_speed (7)	17 K 2.5 2.8 3.4 25.5K 3.0 3.45 4.35
XFER also includes key SEARCH time to localize a key field on track in case of SEARCH KEY CCWs	- Values from Tom Beretvas ROT (uncached and cached devices):
CONNect time for uncached devices	
Blocksize Parallel chnl (ESCON chnl (PROT=1msec) (PROT=1.5msec)	CONN < e.g. 4 msec (ROT D) (avg blocksize of 8K)
2.1K 1.5 msec 1.6 msec 4.2K 2 msec 1.7 msec 8.5K 3 msec 2.0 msec 12.7K 4 msec 2.25 msec 17 K 5 msec 2.5 msec	
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM D.14	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM D.15
Data Transfer Speeds	Cache Size Considerations
	Cache Size Considerations
Transfer Speeds	Ù General Hit Ratio Curve
The following transfer speeds apply for transfers via channels: - channel_speed (usually)	A Hit ratio HR
Xfer_speed =	1.0   x   x - x
- device_speed (cases * below) Device speed cases (*): - non-cached devices - Read or WRITE misses in traditional cached subsystems	x - x   The higher the cache size, - x the higher the hit ratio   - x
(physical 3990–3.⁄6s with real 3380/3390s, 9345s) 2-stage subsystems always transfer at cache=channel speed, even in case of cache misses	x     Cache size     X     Reducing Miss Ratios (MR)
(RVA, RSA, and all RAMACs seen from transfer speed, refer to the chart in part C)	Increase cache size by factor F to reduce MR by factor of 2
Channel Speeds	Bruce Mc Nutt, IBM SSD: F=8 Tom Beretvas, Beretvas Consulting: F=4 sufficient (Observations/Estimates from MVS)
4.2 MB/sec Parallel Channels	Example: MR=30% (HR=70%) at 128M MR=15% (HR=85%) at F x 128M cache size
(3.0 MB/sec in old days) Channel_speed = 17.0 MB/sec ESCON (10.0 MB/sec e.g. old 9121s)	<ul> <li>Required Cache Sizes (ROT)</li> <li>2 views:</li> </ul>
Higher ESCON speed is partly compensated by higher protocol time (as is a tendency in workloads and DIM exploitation)	<ul> <li>1 MB cache per 1 IO/sec DASD I/O rate (HR=80%) (ROT F1)</li> <li>1 MB cache per 1 GB installed DASD capacity (ROT F2) (= 0.1% cache_to_backstore_ratio)</li> </ul>
Í ESCON performance benefits for higher blocksizes only	Both rules coincide if a system has an 'Access Density' of 1 IO/sec per installed GB DASD. The ratio of 'active' and 'passive' DASD data is very installation dependent. If modelling tools are available with actual customer statistics as input, this would be the best predictor for performance
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM D.16	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM D.17

Cache Size Considerations	Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning
	Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning
More Cache Size ROTs	For I/O Performance Tuning, specific attention may be attributed to DASDs with the following characteristics.
Consider that such ROTs may change long term with the change of technology and H/W cost	Only devices are of interest for tuning with - not too low device I/O rate
<ul> <li>Í Also observe specific model dependent cache size recommendations, if given specifically (ROT F3)</li> </ul>	High DASD-utilization (e.g. >25% 30%) (ROT A1)
For cached I/O subsystems with	You may proceed in the order of descending
<ul> <li>high miss resolution time</li> <li>and/or</li> <li>a smaller 'lower interface' bandwidth,</li> </ul>	'Response_Time_Volume'= IORT x IO/sec
it is required and desirable to achieve good IORTs thru a higher hit ratio via a larger cache size.	(e.g. in msec/sec), which is some measure of tuning potential
Í Do not select very small cache sizes for I/O subsystems which use part of cache storage for storing track related data (e.g. count fields, hit ratios, etc in systems with adaptive caching: 3390-6, RAMAC Array Subsystem, 9390)	<ul> <li>U A) Uncached Devices</li> <li>1. High IOSQ time (e.g. &gt; 5 msec) (ROT A2)         Reduce device utilization</li></ul>
í Use all above ROTs (F1, F2, F3), select a reasonable compromise	2. High PEND time (e.g. > 1 or 2 msec) (ROT B) Check Whether device is shared utilization of specific path
NVS Size ROTs	3. High DISC time (e.g. > 15 msec) (ROT C1)
<ul> <li>Applies if NVS is separate from cache</li> </ul>	Check for - high SEEK times (file placement) - high RPS misses (= lost revolutions)
• Very dependent on R/W ratio	caused by high path utilization from other devices 4. High CONN time (e.g. > 4 msec) (ROT D)
<ul> <li>Model dependent recommendations apply (if available) (Required size also depends on 'lower I/F bandwidth')</li> </ul>	Make sure that this is caused by higher blocksize, since RPS should be in effect and used
WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         D.18           Candidate Devices for I/O Tuning	WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         D.19           PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities
	PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities
<b>b</b> B) Cached Devices	ù Technical Background
To start, all symptoms as for uncached DASD apply Refer to last foil	VSE/ESA schedules the I/Os (SSCHs) according to the following rules:
	- Only 1 I/O is allowed to be started/active on each device
Cache specific symptoms:	<ul> <li>All 'System-I/Os' get 'headqueue' priority by using SVC15 and thus are initiated first</li> <li>'Non-System-I/Os' use SVC0 before entering the Channel Queue</li> </ul>
1. High Miss (=low Hit) Ratio for cached DASDs	<ul> <li>Non-System-I/OS' use site before entering the channel queue</li> <li>The VSE Channel Queue is searched in a 'rotating PUBSCAN' to initate the I/Os</li> </ul>
If possible, distinguish between READ and WRITEs:	<ul> <li>If more than 1 request for the same device is ready to be initiated (mostly from different partitions)</li> </ul>
(ROT E) WRITE HR < 90% (<70% 3990-3)	the sequence of I/O initiation is (independent of the partition dispatching priority):
Achievable WRITE hit ratios are high for	<ul> <li>According to PRTYIO, if set</li> <li>On First In First Out (FIFO) base, else</li> </ul>
- Format WRITEs (all WRITE cached subsystems)	ù <b>Purpose</b>
- Update WRITEs (all RAMAC flavors, all 3990-6s, not for 3990-3s)	Flexibly prioritize the sequence of I/O initiations to the same volume in case of volume contention:
For I/O subsystems with separate NVS, low WRITE hit ratios may be caused by too small NVS size.	e.g. prefer Online (CICS) I/Os over batch I/Os to the same volume in case of volume contention
Low overall Hit ratios: - Check size of cache via Cache Size ROTs	<b>Ù</b> Performance Results
2. High DISC_eff time (e.g. > MR x 15 msec)	Runs with Mixed Online and Batch Production loads (using files or the same volumes) showed:
Corresponds to ROT C2. At given miss ratio, tuning similar to 'uncached'	Using PRTYIO to favor CICS Online I/Os vs Batch I/Os resulted in the specific case in
	15% CICS RT improvement at only 1% reduced Batch thruput

PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities	9340 DASD Attachments
PRTYIO Settings for I/O Priorities (cont'd)	
<ul> <li><b>Recommendations</b></li> <li>PRTYIO can only have an effect in case of volume contention.</li> <li>In any case, it is promising to try to reduce volume contention, if possible.</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Description</li> <li>More Usage Hints</li> <li>Remember that the priority sequence is REVERSE to the specification in PRTY for the partition dispatching priorities.</li> <li>Any set/sequence of partitions can be given, separated by commas (,) or equal signs (=).</li> <li>Dynamic partition classes can be specified, BUT only as a whole ('DYNC'), not as individuals.</li> <li>Example: PRTYIO F1,F3,F4=F5,DYNC         Highest: F1         Next lower: F3         Next lower: F4 and F5, treated in FIF0         Next lower: All dynamic partitions</li> </ul>	PART E. 9340 DASD Attachments
Lowest: All remaining partitions in FIFO It is possible and convenient to put the PRTYIO 'AR (attention routine) only' command into the startup procedure for the BG partition, or into a separate POWER job: // EXEC DTRIATIN,PARM='PRTYIO' PRTYIO should be used in the BG startup only after the START F1 and STOP statements, in order to allow dynamic partitions to be included.	
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM D.22	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM E.1
9340 DASD Caching	9340 DASD Caching
<u>Features of Cached 9340 Subsystems</u> " 32 or 64 MB (volatile) cache storage	Performance Patches for Cached 9340s Mandatory H/W patches:
, Read caching only Plus 'Basic Write Caching', but no DASD Fast Write as with 3990-3/6 The following caching bits are exploited SEQuential (up to 2 seq. tracks in cache, no read-ahead) BYPass Cache Inhibit Cache Load	" Microcode level EC 486392 Fixes cache domination by sequential applications Sequential bit in DEFINE EXTENT was not correctly used to limit number of sequential tracks in cache to 2
<ul> <li>" Dynamic, adaptive cache management, controlled by Licenced Internal Code (H/W)</li> <li>48 KB track slots</li> <li>End-of-track staging only</li> <li>Disabling caching for those data that will not benefit (hit ratio permanently monitored and caching decisions adjusted)</li> <li>Switching caching off on device level only by CE (in case of trouble shooting)</li> <li>Í No S/W control required (but ECKD channel pgms)</li> <li>No dynamic caching (on file level) required: 'Self tuning'</li> <li>No cache statistics available, just fast DASD response times</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>H/W Patch E6392AC</li> <li>Ectevel EC486392 and up mandatory</li> <li>Acquired if S/W sets REC CACHE bits</li> <li>REC CACHE bits are used, e.g. by VSAM PTF Ubasics (std since VSE/ESA 1.3.5)</li> <li>for DL/1 data component</li> <li>for SQL/DS</li> <li>This H/W patch avoids that VSAM's use of the Record Caching bits (beneficial for 3990-6) is not misinterpreted by cached 9345s, what then resulted in lower cache hits.</li> <li>Under VM/ESA 1.2.2, this patch requires also APAR VM59317 (PTF UM27166).</li> </ul>
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM E.2	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM E.3

3990-6 I/O Subsystem	3990-6 General Remarks
	General Remarks
	" Purpose These 3990-6 charts were setup in order to highlight VSE/ESA specific performance-related aspects of the 3990-6 Enhancements, announced 03/94, and 03/96.
	For a full discussion of the functions refer to the official 3990-6 documentation.
PART F.	" More Info on 3990-6
3990-6 I/O Subsystem	3990–6 Storage Control Enhancements Ivory letter 194–051, dated 03/01/94
	IBM 3390-6 Technical Information 3990MOD6 package on MKTTOOLS disk (UNCLASSIFIED)
ù Enhancements	IBM 3990-6 Record Cache Performance Improvements 3990PERF package on MKTTOOLS disk (IBM INTERNAL USE ONLY) (Available to your IBM representative, for discussion with you)
<ul> <li>È infancements</li> <li>È RDF</li> </ul>	3990–6 Record Cache I Performance Results WSC Flash 9422.2, Doc–ID 0256023395, 06/94 (IBM INTERNAL USE ONLY) (Available to your IBM representative, for discussion with you)
Ù       Record Caching/Adaptive Caching         D       E         D       E         D       E         D       E	3990–6 Large Cache/NVS Performance WSC Flash 9416.1, Doc-ID OZSGO23379, 04/94 (IBM INTERNAL USE ONLY) (Available to your IBM representative, for discussion with you)
U Exploitation by VSE U Recommendations	3990-6 Storage Control and RAMAC Array Family Enhancements Performance White Paper 3990ENWP package on MKTTOOLS disk, 03/96
ù PPRC	Solving Performance problems with the 3990–6 Record Cache, Jeff Berger, IBM, SHARE 83 Session 5068, 08/94
	Subject documents include all enhancements, including those with special value for high-end oriented installations.
	They also contain quantitative performance results for selected environments. Be aware of the dependency of such performance data and improvements from the workload and the specific environment.
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM F.1	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM F.2
3990-6 Summary	3990-6 Enhancement Summary
	3990-6 Storage Control Enhancements (Summary)
" 3990-6 Control Unit offers increased capacity and additional functions/performance for 'less' or 'non-cache-friendly' applications	<ul> <li>Digger storage sizes         <ul> <li>(up to 4 GB cache, up to 128 MB NVS, 07/96)</li> <li>Faster internal processing and transfer</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
2x64 Logical Paths maximum (instead of 2x8 for 3990–3)	Higher overall throughput potential vs 3990-3
" VSE/ESA supports all 3990-6 functions being S/W	<ul> <li>in the image of th</li></ul>
transparent	especially at higher accesses/sec per MB cache. (Was available before Adaptive Caching = Record Cache II, 01/95)
bigger cache and NVS sizes	í to exploit cache benefits without staging/caching cache inefficient data
faster internal processing and transfer	$\grave{\upsilon}$ 'Adaptive Caching' (or 'Record Cache II')
Includes faster de-staging of data out of NVS (important for RAMAC Array DASD)	Flexible cache management Standard on all models, CE can switch it off for trouble shooting
Adaptive Caching ('Record Cache II')	Í to dynamically select optimal caching strategy for each track
" VSE/ESA 1.3 via PTF also supports	1 to offload system programmer from tuning activities
the new Record Mode ('Record Cache I')	Key to both functional enhancements is Ù <b>'Regular Data Format' (RDF)</b>
the 'Regular Data Format'	<ul> <li>Wegular Data Format' (RDF)</li> <li>Is more an internal function         <ul> <li>S/W can set bits in DEFINE EXTENT CCW</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
the 'Regular Data Format' (SQL/DS data bases and DL/1 data component)	<ul> <li>W 'Regular Data Format' (RDF)</li> <li>Is more an internal function         <ul> <li>S/W can set bits in DEFINE EXTENT CCW (VSE settings discussed under 'VSE/ESA 1.3.x Exploitation')</li> <li>Adaptive Caching can find out RDF property</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
the 'Regular Data Format'	<ul> <li>Wegular Data Format' (RDF)</li> <li>Is more an internal function         <ul> <li>S/W can set bits in DEFINE EXTENT CCW (VSE settings discussed under 'VSE/ESA 1.3.x Exploitation')</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

### Record Caching

#### 'Record Cache (mode)' or 'Record Access' (or 'Record Cache I')

Specified in the DE CCW, valid only for RDF tracks

#### Staging only of the requested record no EOT staging as for track caching Staging at READ misses, all (RDF DFW) WRITEs are hits Cache not wasted for cache-unfriendly data Savings in cache storage depends on cache space management. Suited for data sets or volumes with poor caching characteristics BUT: CCW must specify record cache mode

Requires proper determination of cache unfriendly data by S/W, if subsystem cannot determine that dynamically

### 1 A 'new complementary cache mgmnt algorithm'

S/W support required (RDF and REC cache bits)

### 'Adaptive Caching' (or 'Record Cache II')

- Dynamic switching between record cache and ••• track caching (track individual) 3990-6 determines internally (after each IML), which of the tracks benefit from track caching (vs record caching)
- 1 A combination of 'old' and 'new cache mgmnt algorithms'

No S/W support required on top of 3990-3 support, Licensed Internal Code only.

Available since 01/95

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM

## Regular Data Format (RDF) ...

#### Regular Data Format (cont'd)

#### Selected Background Info

- Data will be written to DASD as soon as NVS storage is required, or as soon as CU is less busy.
- Modified data are copied from the cache into NVS immediately. For channel programs with 'FORMAT-Writes' (WRITE CKD), the RDF bit may be set, but, naturally, cannot bring benefits. This is already a hit as long as oriented to record 0.
- RDF may also be of benefit for ECKD channel programs with Inhibit Cache Load (UPDATE-Write in case of track caching gives a hit). The frequency depends on the application.
- For READ or WRITE channel programs with Bypass Cache honoured there may be no benefit by RDF.
- UPDATE-Writes mostly are done after a READ. So, RDF benefits exist for those situations where a READ was not done before
  has ocurred 'long' ago.

#### **RDF in DEFINE EXTENT CCW** ,,

RDF bits (byte 7 bit 0-1 in Global Attributes EXTENDED) To set the RDF bit also means that the records are unkeyed with standard record zero (RO) on each track.

#### Note ,,

System programmers do NOT have to deal with any S/W bit settings in CCWs

This is done by the access methods and only of direct interest for those

- setting up own channel programs
- responsible to understand performance implications

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

Regular Data Format (RDF)

### Regular Data Format (RDF) Rationale

Most of the records (data fields) of CKD/ECKD volumes are fully formatted with equal length records, without (H/W) key fields (all count fields with same counter).

- > Such type of tracks are called here 'RDF tracks'.
- No RDF (e.g. 3990-3)

DASD Fast Write (DFW) requests with 'FORMAT-Write' CCWs oriented to record 0 could and were treated always as hits, even if the track was not in cache ('predictable writes'), resulting in an immediate device end.

### 3990-6 RDF Extensions

#### Cached WRITEs

A fast device end can also be given to an 'UPDATE-Write', after a record is written into cache and NVS: formerly called 'Quick Write'.

So all UPDATE-Writes to an RDF track are hits (if DFW ON and NVS ON), provided sufficient NVS is available.

This extension is valid both for - track caching (End-Of-Track (EOT) staging as for 3990-3, but for such requests no staging occurs) - record cache mode

#### Cached READs

- For RDF tracks, a fast READ device end can be given:
  - if only the referenced record is in cache and NVS (which stems from an RDF-Write in RECORD CACHE mode). -> Use of the RDF bit in READ channel programs does not harm, but has no effect.
- if the record with residual track is in cache (as was always done on 3990-3 with TRACK CACHING without RDF)

If there is a READ miss, the RPS Miss Avoidance may enhance physical access to the disk (ESCON channels, for parallel channels '3990 Enhanced Mode' is required)

F.6

#### WK/HJU 2001-07-15

F.5

F.7

Copyright IBM New Cache bit Settings and Effects

#### New S/W Cache bit Settings and Effects

Update-Writes	Cachin	g Bit Combina	tion
RDF Record Access	-	x -	X X
Track Caching only	Miss possible	QW	QW
Track Caching + Record Access	Miss possible	QW	QW +benefits if cache unfriendly
Adaptive Caching	QW	QW (immediate)	QW (immediate)

#### RDF bits beneficial even with 3990-6 Adaptive Caching

Traditional track caching mode: – higher overall DASD Fast Write hit ratios (Quick Write for RDF Update-Writes)

Record cache mode: – enabling this mode, benefits for cache unfriendly data

Adaptive Caching: - allows immediate decision of Quick Write

Copyright IBM

#### Record cache bits to be used with care

For subsystems with Adaptive Caching, record caching is enforced, even if adaptive caching might have decided to do track caching for certain times and tracks

For really cache unfriendly data only, especially at higher accesses/sec per MB cache size

Be aware that with higher avg cache sizes, definition of cache friendliness may shift

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

F.8

### IBM 3990-3/6 H/W Defaults for Caching

#### IBM 3990-3/6 Standard (H/W) Defaults for Caching

Function	Default
Subsystem Caching Basic Write Caching DASD Fast Write NVS Cache Fast Write All devices cached Normal (LRU) Caching Seq. Access Caching Bypass Cache Inhibit Cache Load	ON OFF *5 OFF *5 ENABLED *1 YES ON ENABLED *2 ENABLED *2 ENABLED *2
Record Caching Adaptive Caching Sequential Detect	ON (3990-6) ON (3990-6) ON (3990-6) *3
Support Fac.Mgmt Opt.	OFF(3990-6) *4

\*1 S/W must provide the pertinent bit setting in the DEFINE EXTENT of every chain to be effective

\*2 Always available. S/W must provide bit combination in each DEFINE EXTENT to be effective

\*3 Sequential Detect is a new function as of 06/96 (refer to separate chart)

\*4 New options as of 05/96, may need IBM assistance

\*5 May have changed meanwhile to ON, check in any case

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### 3990-6 Exploitation by VSE/ESA ...

#### 3990-6 Functions for VSE/ESA

	3990 Model				
			1.1/1.2	1.3/1.4	2.1/2.
FUNCTIO		- 1	==== 3990	BASIC MOD	)E ====
1GB/2GE	Cache (3GB/4GB 06/96)	*	YES	YES	YES
32/64MB	NVS (128MB 06/96)	*	NO	YES	YES
RDF (Re	gular Data Format)	*	NO	PTF ***	YES
Record	Mode (Record Cache I)	*	NO	PTF ***	YES
Adapt.	Caching (Rec. Cache II	) *	YES	YES ****	YES
Dual Co	py Enhancements	*	NO	YES \$	YES
XRC (Ex	tended Remote Copy)	i	NO	NO I	NO
PPRC (F	eer-to-Peer Remote C.)	i	NO	NO I	YES
	functions:				
CUIR (C	U Initiated Reconfig.	) (	NO	NO I	YES
	s for Parallel Ch.				
* *** YES PTF NO	Software level suppor Software level plus P Software level does n	unct tima ts t TF(s ot s	tion ally explo this item s) supports	ited if RDF s this item is item	set

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### 3990-6 Exploitation by VSE/ESA

#### 3990-6 Exploitation by VSE/ESA 1.3 and up

Adaptive Caching support 3990-3 support mostly sufficient, but new bit settings beneficial

...

**,**,

F.9

F.11

- **Record Cache Mode support**
- RDF set in ECKD channel programs ...

Required for Record Cache Mode, beneficial for Adaptive Caching. The VSAM APAR/PTF for VSE/ESA 1.3.x is DY43072/UD90363. Under VM/ESA 1.2.2, this PTF requires APAR VM59317 (PTF UM27166) This VM fix avoids that VM Fast CCW translation is aborted and the standard VM CCW translation is used instead.

VSAM, represents 70 to 80% of all I/Os

Medium potential

The following holds for VSE/ESA 2.1 and up:

LIBRarian and FETCH/LOAD Some potential, overall Page Manager Small potential, if paging Lock Manager Small potential, since update occurs shortly after read HardCopy support

Was CKD in VSE/ESA 1.3 with 2K blocks, 4K in 2.1. Small overall potential by RDF

Support of 3990-6 'Enhanced Mode' (2.1 only)

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM F.10

F.12

### Further 3990-6 Enhancements

3990-6 Sequential Detect

Available since 06/96

Detects sequential processing of disk areas

Invoked, if >3 cylinders are read sequentially

Provides 'sequential' pre-staging benefits ,, as with setting of SEQuential 'bit' for ECKD

BUT records are left in cache for normal LRU replacement to allow

1 Beneficial when no SEQuential bit is set and access is at least short term/partially sequential

1 SEQ bit setting by S/W is still beneficial in order not to flood cache with sequential (non-reused) data

Scope of I/Os potentially affected

- SEQ bit setting for IBM channel programs in VSE is not done
  - for any non-convertable CKD channel programs
  - for (normally few) CKD-ECKD converted channel programs
  - for I/O accesses usually random, but in specific cases done sequentially.
  - Naturally, also vendor data base products may apply.
- For ECKD channel programs with BYP or ICL set (provided BYP or ICL are set to be ignored globally, refer to 3990-6 SF options chart):
- Sequential Detect is also in effect. e.g. LIBRARIAN BACKUP and RESTORE FAST COPY DUMP (OPT>1) and RESTORE and COPY FILE
- For ECKD channel programs with RECord caching set, Sequential Detect is also enabled

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

	Further 3990-6 Enhancements
	3990-6 Support Facilities Mgmnt Options
3990-6 Sequential Detect (cont'd)	Available since 06/96 as LIC update, but not mandatory 'Extends cache mgmnt functions beyond general purpose workloads'
	" Ignore Bypass Cache
Function in new u-code is active by default	" Ignore Inhibit Cache Load
Can be switched off at the service panel	" Sequential LRU Processing
Function not retrofitted to RAMAC Array Subsystem,	Avoids early discard of tracks, beneficial in case of early re-use by same or other task
but also contained in 9390 and RVA	" NVS Destage Threshold Freespace
	Reserves NVS storage for 'clustered WRITEs'
	" Customer specific assessment is required
More information	Options can have also negative impact, depending on workload: e.g. the first 3 options may require big cache sizes
3990 Sequential Detect Enhancement, WSC Flash 9633, 06/96	" Activation
IBM RAMAC 3 Array Storage, ITSO Red book, SG24–4835 (12/96), p93	Request assistance by IBM Tucson Engineering (Options now als available via standard Sevice Facility interface)
	May be done e.g. for 'off-shift' loads only, but control unit must be re-IMLed
	í Increased flexibility for specific I/O loads
	More detailed info is contained in:
	<ul> <li>3990 Support Facility Cache Management Options, WSC Flash 9618.1, 05/96</li> </ul>
KYHJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         F.13           VSE/ESA Caching Recommendations	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM F.14
/SE/ESA 3990-3/6 Caching Recommendations	VSE/ESA 3990-6 Caching Recommendations
I No Adaptive Caching available or installed:	
J No Adaptive Caching available or installed: 3990-3 or elder 3990-6	
3990-3 or elder 3990-6 Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base	<b>ù</b> Adaptive Caching (Record Caching II) available:
3990-3 or elder 3990-6 Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base I Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),	<ul> <li>À Adaptive Caching (Record Caching II) available:</li> <li>Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2,</li> </ul>
3990-3 or elder 3990-6 Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files), especially those with	
3990-3 or elder 3990-6 Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),	Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2, " 3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track
3990-3 or elder 3990-6 Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files), especially those with - files having high read/write ratio	Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2, " 3990-6 with Adaptive Caching
<ul> <li>3990-3 or elder 3990-6</li> <li>Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base</li> <li>Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),</li> <li>especially those with         <ul> <li>files having high read/write ratio or many WRITEs to RDF tracks (3990-6)</li> <li>or</li> <li>files with read hit ratio of 70% or better or</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2,</li> <li>3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track base</li> <li>Provides performance benefits</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>3990-3 or elder 3990-6</li> <li>Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base</li> <li>Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),</li> <li>especially those with <ul> <li>files having high read/write ratio</li> <li>or many WRITEs to RDF tracks (3990-6)</li> <li>or</li> <li>files with read hit ratio of 70% or better</li> <li>or</li> <li>VSE Lock File</li> <li>frequently used catalogs or libraries</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2, " 3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track base
<ul> <li>3990-3 or elder 3990-6</li> <li>Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base</li> <li>Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),</li> <li>especially those with <ul> <li>files having high read/write ratio</li> <li>or many WRITEs to RDF tracks (3990-6)</li> <li>or</li> <li>files with read hit ratio of 70% or better</li> <li>or</li> <li>VSE Lock File</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2,</li> <li>3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track base</li> <li>Provides performance benefits vs all non-adaptive solutions         Especially for 'smaller' cache sizes     </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>3990-3 or elder 3990-6</li> <li>Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base</li> <li>Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),</li> <li>especially those with <ul> <li>files having high read/write ratio</li> <li>or many WRITEs to RDF tracks (3990-6)</li> <li>or</li> <li>files with read hit ratio of 70% or better</li> <li>or</li> <li>VSE Lock File</li> <li>frequently used catalogs or libraries</li> <li>or read intensive VSAM files</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2,</li> <li>3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track base</li> <li>Provides performance benefits vs all non-adaptive solutions Especially for 'smaller' cache sizes </li> <li>Offloads system programmers from</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>3990-3 or elder 3990-6</li> <li>Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base</li> <li>Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),</li> <li>especially those with <ul> <li>files having high read/write ratio or many WRITEs to RDF tracks (3990-6)</li> <li>or</li> <li>files with read hit ratio of 70% or better or</li> <li>VSE Lock File</li> <li>frequently used catalogs or libraries or read intensive VSAM files</li> <li>frequently read VSAM index components</li> </ul> </li> <li>VSAM parameters REPLICATE, IMBED not reasonable for cached files</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2,</li> <li>3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track base</li> <li>Provides performance benefits vs all non-adaptive solutions Especially for 'smaller' cache sizes </li> <li>Offloads system programmers from Speculations on cache friendliness of files</li></ul>
<ul> <li>3990-3 or elder 3990-6</li> <li>Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base</li> <li>Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),</li> <li>especially those with <ul> <li>files having high read/write ratio or many WRITEs to RDF tracks (3990-6)</li> <li>or</li> <li>files with read hit ratio of 70% or better or</li> <li>VSE Lock File</li> <li>frequently used catalogs or libraries or read intensive VSAM files</li> <li>frequently read VSAM index components</li> </ul> </li> <li>VSAM parameters REPLICATE, IMBED not reasonable for cached files</li> <li>Í Start with a trial to cache all volumes, observe results. If not OK,</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2,</li> <li>3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track base</li> <li>Provides performance benefits vs all non-adaptive solutions Especially for 'smaller' cache sizes </li> <li>Offloads system programmers from</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>3990-3 or elder 3990-6</li> <li>Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base</li> <li>Í Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),</li> <li>especially those with <ul> <li>files having high read/write ratio or many WRITEs to RDF tracks (3990-6)</li> <li>or</li> <li>files with read hit ratio of 70% or better or</li> <li>VSE Lock File</li> <li>frequently used catalogs or libraries or read intensive VSAM files</li> <li>frequently read VSAM index components</li> </ul> </li> <li>VSAM parameters REPLICATE, IMBED not reasonable for cached files</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2,</li> <li>3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track base</li> <li>Provides performance benefits vs all non-adaptive solutions Especially for 'smaller' cache sizes </li> <li>Offloads system programmers from Speculations on cache friendliness of files</li></ul>
<ul> <li>3990-3 or elder 3990-6</li> <li>Note that S/W cache control is on DEVICE base, NOT on FILE base</li> <li>Cache all 'important' DASD volumes (files),</li> <li>especially those with <ul> <li>files having high read/write ratio or many WRITEs to RDF tracks (3990-6) or</li> <li>files with read hit ratio of 70% or better or</li> <li>VSE Lock File</li> <li>frequently used catalogs or libraries or read intensive VSAM files</li> <li>frequently read VSAM files</li> <li>frequently read VSAM index components</li> </ul> </li> <li>VSAM parameters REPLICATE, IMBED not reasonable for cached files</li> <li>Start with a trial to cache all volumes, observe results. If not OK,</li> <li>Restart with most important volumes,</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Also applies to RAMAC Array Subsystem, RAMAC 3, RSA-2,</li> <li>3990-6 with Adaptive Caching automatically selects caching status on track base</li> <li>Provides performance benefits vs all non-adaptive solutions         Especially for 'smaller' cache sizes     </li> <li>Offloads system programmers from         Speculations on cache friendliness of files Moving files around     </li> </ul>

Support of Pinned Data for Cached 3990s	Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy (PPRC)
Pinned Data for DASD Fast Write (DFW) , Pinned data occur, when DFW data (in cache/NVS) cannot be written to DASD	<u>PPRC Function</u> Synchronously 'dual copy' data to a remote disk: Real-time continuous data shadowing, used for
They are          ,de-staged automatically to DASD as soon as possible         ,discarded         by a special subsystem IML         (with 'activated' REINIT)         e.g. by the CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,REINIT         command         ,kept at a power failure, since still 48 hours in NVS         Í VSE/ESA 2.1 provides the ability to display pinned tracks in the NVS of the 3990 control unit:         Extension of the CACHE,UNIT=cuu, STATUS command display         PINNED DATA FOR: CYL= TRK =         Function retrofitted as PTF to VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4         "Further details         Refer to '3990 Operations and Recovery', GA32-0133	<ul> <li>Disaster recovery         <ul> <li>DASD migration</li> </ul> </li> <li>Remote disk of same type, attached to a remote 3990-6         <ul> <li>Includes 3390-3s of a RAMAC 2 Array DASD configuration</li> <li>Both 3990-6s are connected via ESCON links</li></ul></li></ul>
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM F.17 PPRC Performance	WKHJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM F.18 PPRC Performance
<ul> <li>Scenario</li> <li>1. WRITE data into cache/NVS of the local/primary storage control</li> <li>2. Generate Channel End to free primary channel</li> <li>3. WRITE same data to cache/NVS of the remote storage control (from primary 3990-6)</li> <li>4. Generate Device End to be presented to the 'application'</li> <li>1 Data transferred 'cache to cache', no processor involvement</li> <li>1 DASD Fast Write required for performance reasons</li> <li>PPRC Performance</li> <li>" Few msec more effective device response times for WRITEs</li> </ul>	Configuration Recommendations         Recommendations apply to 3990-6         • Double the cache/NVS sizes from what is currently installed (256M cache and 16M NVS is absolute minimum)         • 4 ESCON host channels should be connected to each 3990-6         • 4 ESCON paths should be connected to each 3990-6, 2 ESCON paths sufficient if w/o a great deal of sequential WRITE activity         • Configure the secondary storage control identically to the prime         • PPRC stress cases (requiring more resources)         • R/W ratio < 3:1         • Transfer block size > 12K         • Peer-to-peer distance > 9 km         • WRITE I/O rate > 200 IO/sec         More info is contained         • in a document available from your IBM representative:         'IBM 3990-6 Storage Control, Remote Copy Services Performance' 03/14/96, 36 pages         White Paper, MKITOLS document 3990RCWP         • in the 'Red Book'         'Planning for IBM Remote Copy', 6624-2595-00
(4 to 6 msec for 4K data and up to 100 meters, w/o addt'l queuing) Í Some performance degradation for WRITES	<ul> <li>'Planning for IBM Remote Copy', 6624-2595-00 ITSO San Jose, 12/95, 333 pages (XRC and PPRC, focus is on MVS)</li> <li>- in 'Migrating to RAMAC 2' by Bill Worthington VM/ESA and VSE/ESA Technical Conference, Orlando, 06/96</li> <li>- PPRCOPY commands are described in a further MKTTOOLS document cal PPRCDSF</li> </ul>

RAMAC Array Family	RAMAC Array Family -Contents-
PART G. RAMAC Array Family	Here RAMAC also applies to RAMAC 2 and RAMAC 3 Index Ù RAID Overview Ù RAMAC Array Family , General Remarks , Summary , More Details , Overall Performance , Checks in case of Write Degradation , ADDing VSE DASDs , Potential Vendor Program Deficiency
<ul> <li>, RAMAC Array DASD</li> <li>, RAMAC Array Subsystem</li> <li>, RAMAC Array Storage (RAMAC 3)</li> <li>RAMAC Virtual Array Storage</li> <li>RAMAC Electronic Array Storage</li> <li>RAMAC Scalable Array Storage</li> <li>are discussed in separate parts</li> </ul>	<ul> <li> <i>v</i> RAMAC (2) Array DASD         <ul> <li>Performance PTFs</li> <li>Intensive Sequential Writes</li> <li> <i>v</i> RAMAC (2) Array Subsystem                 <ul></ul></li></ul></li></ul>
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM G.1 General Remarks	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM G.2 General DASD Issues
General Remarks         The following charts on the RAMAC Array Family have been setup mostly from a VSE performance view. They do not and cannot replace the extensive official documents available on the MKTTOOLS disk:         'Announcement Overview Presentation Guide' RAMAOG package on MKTTOOLS         'RAID Primer' White Paper RAIDRAB package on MKTTOOLS         'RAMAC Dynamic Sparing Paper', 06/95         'YRAMAC Dynamic Sparing Paper', 06/95         'YRAMAC Dynamic Sparing Paper', 06/95         'YAMAC Package on MKTTOOLS         'RAMAC Array Family Performance White Paper'         06/95 ( pages)         RAMAC Array Family Performance White Paper'         06/95 ( pages)         RAMAC Array Family', 6624-2509, ITSO Center San Jose, -00, 12/94, 168 pages on MKTTOOLS         Documents that also reflect the RAMAC 2 announcement of 06/95:         'RAMAC 2 Array Products Performance'         June 09, 1995 (11 pages)         RAMAC 2 Array Products Performance'         June 09, 1995 (12 pages)         RAMAC 2 Array Products Performance'         'RAMAC 2 Array Products Performance'         'Sobeleted by the RM2ENCH update	Overall Criteria         " Cost         " Capacity         " Performance         " Environmental characteristics         " 'Migrateability'         " Attachability         " Reliability         " Reliability         " Serviceability         Means to improve 'R A S' vs 'Base Mode'         " Dual (I/O) Systems         Mirroring on (I/O) system level         " System Checksum (by S/W)         - Uses host CPU resources (05/400)         - Stop when error detected         " Mirroring (RAID-1)         RAID (>1)
'RAMAC 2 Array Products Performance Update' October 18, 1995 (11 pages) RM2BENCH package on MKTTOOLS 'IBM RAMAC Array Family Additions (RAMAC 2) Presentation Guide' October 31, 1995 (95 pages) SG244563 package on MKTTOOLS 3990-6 Storage Control and RAMAC Array Family Enhancements Performance White Paper 3990ENWP package on MKTTOOLS disk, 03/96	<pre>" RAID (&gt;1) For RAID, refer e.g. to</pre>

### **RAID Overview**

#### RAID Principles (Overview)

,,

- Redundant Array of Independent/Inexpensive Disks
- Data and/or parity are located on different devices í Single device failure still allows to access data
  - 1 At least WRITEs require access to >1 device

RAID	Level		1	2	3	4	5
Mirrorin (identic = Dual C	g of a total volume al data pattern, no pa opy	rity)	x	-	-	-	-
Striping	/Interleave Increment: a distributed across >						t
(phys.) – Bit	devices on		/a	x	-	-	-
- Byte - Reco	(*) rd,'sector' (*) k, 'segment' (*)le			-	x -	x	-
Parity d	ata on		/a	-	-	-	x
- mult - extr	iple (phys.) devices a (phys.) device			× -	x	x	× -
- as 0	ment of all devices (a NE arm (synchronized) pendent		/a	x -	x -	×	- X
Striping	or Interleave incremen	it varies	depe	ending	on im	plemen	tation
RAID-0 st	ripes data across mult	. disks,	w/o	redun	dancy	-> no	'RAID'
	RAID-5 provide virtua						
	a spare device may be a RAID-5 implementati					ation	featur
	rent device failures a		-91	,it	•		
RAID-1	: Data Mirrorino	a					
	2,3: Parallel Acces		/6				
	1,5: Independent /			21/2			
	,5. muepenuem /	400835	AII	ays			
(/HJU 2001-0	7-15 Copyrig	ht IBM					G.5
	DAIN Dartarmai			cati	anc		
	RAID Performa	nce Im	рп	cath	5115		
ome RA	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p	nplicatio	-		5115		
ome RA Penal Addit	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p ional (phys.) I/Os	nplicatio arity (*) to ha	ons	i le pa	rity c		
ome RA Penal Addit	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p ional (phys.) I/Os	nplicatio arity (*) to ha	ind	le pa	rity c		
ome RA Penal Addit	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os ( ndom WRITE accesses: EAD old data	nplicatio arity (*) to ha	ind	le pa	rity d		
ome RA Penal Addit	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p ional (phys.) I/Os	nplicatio arity (*) to ha	ind	le pa	rity d		
ome RA Penal Addit	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os ndom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data RITE new data RITE new data (*)	nplicatio arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write	ind ial	forma data parity	rity c t-writi y (*)	Es:	itiona : on
ome RA Penal Addit Radit R W W W W N Ssumi I/os i	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os and (phys.) I/Os	nplication arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write active, to	ial new new	forma data parity ffect r I/Os	rity c t-WRITI y (*) of the and d	Es: se add epends	
ome RA Penal Addit R R R W W W N Ssumi I/Os i - (ag	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p ional (phys.) I/Os ndom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data EAD old parity (*) RITE new parity (*)	nplication arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write active, tl sses of o wented pare etcly over	ial new new allo	forma data parity ffect r I/Os elism oped ci	rity c t-WRITI y (*) of the and d	Es: se add epends	
Ome RA Penal Addit R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p ional (phys.) I/Os ndom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data EAD old parity (*) RITE new parity (*) ng DASD Fast Write is is on Read and Write mole ree of possible/implem MAC does allow a complet ity and fully overlapp e of WRITE implementat	nplication arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write Write active, tl sses of o contented pare etaly ove ed parity vion	ial new new allo	forma data parity ffect r I/Os elism oped ci	rity c t-WRITI y (*) of the and d	Es: se add epends	
ome RA Penal Addit R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os endom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data RITE new parity (*) ng DASD Fast Write is s on Read and Write mi ree of possible/implem RAC does allow a compl ity and fully overlapp e of WRITE implementat - KITE cache (NN - combining/group	nplication arity (*) to ha (*) to ha (*) to ha write write active, ti sses of a sess of a sess of a issue of a setaly over each parity (ion (5, RAMAC) ing WRITE	ial ind ial new ne e ther all wR s (	forma data parity ffect r I/Os elism pped c: ITEs)	rity c t-WRITI y (*) of the and d	Es: se add epends	
Ome RA Penal Addit R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os choom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data RITE new parity (*) ng DASD Fast Write is s on Read and Write mi ree of possible/implem RAC does allow a compl ity and fully overlapp e of WRITE implementat - WRITE cache (NV	nplication arity (*) to ha (*) to ha (*) to ha write write active, ti sses of a sess of a sess of a issue of a setaly over each parity (ion (5, RAMAC) ing WRITE	ial ind ial new ne e ther all wR s (	forma data parity ffect r I/Os elism pped c: ITEs)	rity c t-WRITI y (*) of the and d	Es: se add epends	
ome RA Penal Addit R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os endom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data RITE new parity (*) ng DASD Fast Write is s on Read and Write mi ree of possible/implem RAC does allow a compl ity and fully overlapp e of WRITE implementat - KITE cache (NN - combining/group	nplication arity (*) to ha (*) to ha	ial ind ial new ne e ther all wR s (	forma data parity ffect r I/Os elism pped c: ITEs)	rity c t-WRITI y (*) of the and d	Es: se add epends	
ome RA Penal Addit R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os and (phys.) I/Os the old gata the new data the new d	nplication arity (*) to ha (*) to ha	ial ind ial new ne e ther all wR s (	forma data parit; ffect selism opped c: ITES)	rity c t-writi y (*) of the and d	Es: se add epends	
ome RA Penal Addit R R Ssumi I/Os i - deg (RA Par - typ - I/O Perfol	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os and (phys.) I/Os	nplication arity (*) to ha (*) to ha	ial ind ial new ne e ther all wR s (	forma data parit; ffect r I/Os Diism (TES) 93337) y	rity c t-WRITI y (*) of the and d alcula	Es: se add epends tion o	
Ome RA Penal Addit Addit R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os andom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data EAD old parity (*) RITE new parity (*) ng DASD Fast Write is son Read and Write mi rece of possible/implem HAC does allow a compl by and fully overlapp e of WRITE implementat - WRITE cache (NW - combining/STRU capacity of the physi rmance Conseque READs WRIT No penalty No pe	nplication arity (*) to ha sequent Write Write active, th sses of o ented party over the party the party over the party the party over the party over the party over the pa	ial ial new new s (9 rray	le pa forma data parit: fffect r I/Os elism oped c: (ITES) 9337) y	rity c t-writi y (*) of the and d	Es: se add epends tion o	f
ome RA Penal Addit R Assuni I/Os i - deg (RA Par - typ - I/O Perfol RAID-2	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os and (phys.) I/Os	nplication arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write write active, ti sses of o lented pareity ison etaly over etaly	ial ial new new all( rray d	forma data parit; ffect r I/Os alism JITES) 3337) y Suit; (50% -	rity c t-writi y (*) of the and d alcula alcula d for E inter DASD	Es: se add epends tion o	f
Ome RA Penal Addit Addit R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os andom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data EAD old parity (*) RITE new parity (*) ng DASD Fast Write is son Read and Write mi rece of possible/implem HAC does allow a compl by and fully overlapp e of WRITE implementat - WRITE cache (NW - combining/STRU capacity of the physi rmance Conseque READs WRIT No penalty No pe	nplication arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write write active, tl sses of o cented pare etaly ove ed parity ion S, RAMAC) ing WRITE cal HDD a nces Es innalty d/accesse (1 arm),	ial ial new new all( rray d	forma data parit; ffect r I/Os alism JITES) 3337) y Suit; (50% -	rity C t-WRITI y (*) of the and d alcula ed for 5 inte	Es: se add epends tion o	f
ome RA Penal Addit R Assuni I/Os i - deg (RA Par - typ - I/O Perfol RAID-2	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p ional (phys.) I/Os andom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data EAD old parity (*) ng DASD Fast Write is so n Read and Write mi rece of possible/implem MAC does allow a compl so n Read and Write mi rece of possible/implem MAC does allow a compl e of WRITE implementat - WRITE cache (NW - combining/group capacity of the physi rmance Conseque READs WRIT No penalty No pe All devices require All devices require All devices occupied but R/W in parallel Good Parit	nplication arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write write active, the sses of o contented pare etely ove ented pare of parity of on S, RAMACD ing WRITE cal HDD a <b>nCCES</b> (1 arm), y device	ial new new new new new new new new definition of the new new new definition of the new new new new new new new new new ne	le pa forma data parit: ffect r 1/0s blism oped c: ism oped c: so so so so y Suiti (So % - Huge	rity c t-writi y (*) of the and d alcula alcula d for E inter DASD	Es: se add tion o nsive space)	f
ome RA Penal Addit Ra R Assumi I/Os i - deg (cRA par - typ - I/O Perfol RAID-2 RAID-2 RAID-3 RAID-4 RAID-5	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p tional (phys.) I/Os andom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data EAD old parity (*) RITE new parity (*) rig DASD Fast Write is s on Read and Write mi ree of possible/implem MRITE cache (NV - combining/group capacity of the physi rmance Conseque READs WRIT No penalty No pe All devices require All devices require but R/W in parallel Good Penity ()	nplication arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write write active, ti sses of o rented pare- etely ove- etely ove- etel etel etel etel etel etel etel et	all( wR) s () d	le pa forma data parit; fffect r I/Os elism oped c; iTES) 9337) 9 Suit; (S0% - Huge High	rity C +-WRITH y (*) of the and d alcula ed for E inte DASD seq.	Es: se add epends tion c space) files atio	f
Ome RA Penal Addit Ra Assumi I/OS i - deg (RA Par - typ - I/O Perfol RAID-1 RAID-2 RAID-3	ID Performance In ty for RAID with p ional (phys.) I/Os ndom WRITE accesses: EAD old data RITE new data EAD old parity (*) ng DASD Fast Write is so n Read and Write mi rece of possible/implem MAC does allow a compl mance and write mi rece of possible/implementat - WRITE cache (NW - combining/group capacity of the physi rmance Conseque READs WRIT No penalty No pe All devices require All devices require but R/W in parallel Good Parit I WRITE	nplication arity (*) to ha Sequent Write Write write active, ti sses of o rented pare- etely ove- etely ove- etel etel etel etel etel etel etel et	all( wR) s () d	le pa forma data parit; fffect r I/Os elism oped c; iTES) 9337) 9 Suit; (S0% - Huge High	rity c t-WRITI y (*) of the and d alcula alcula seq. for R/W r	Es: se add epends tion c space) files atio	f

### RAID Overview ...

### Parity Aspects

Parity schemes Even parity Odd parity Error Correction Code (ECC)

A more sophisticated use of parity, written with data

#### " Parity bases

,,

Parity data may be retrieved/stored in data segments: bit, byte, multibyte, record, block

#### " Parity usage

Reading parity data:

Concurrently to READs (Parallel Access Arrays) Separately, but overlapped to data (Independent Access Arrays) Writing parity data:

Always on physical device separated from associated data

## RAID Advisory Board news

 For a recent change in classification of disk storage systems according to extraordinary data protection and availability criteria, refer to

http://www.raid-advisory.com/criteria.html

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM

#### G.6

### **RAID-5 Benefits**

#### RAID-5 Benefits

Refers e.g. to the RAID-5 implementation of IBM RAMAC

- " No outage from a single disk failure With RAID-6 (RVA) even 2 disks may fail concurrently
- " Failed HDA can be replaced while system up
- " Data on new HDA is rebuilt automatically while system is running
  - No host resources required - I/O performance degradation during recovery and rebuilt
  - RAMAC Dynamic Sparing Option

 HDA can be removed, replaced, reformatted, and good data built while system has full access to data in the drawer.
 When HDA has been rebuilt, the drawer will sense its presence.

 $\rm \acute{1}$  System remains available for customer use

Copyright IBM

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

"

\_\_\_\_

G.8

	AC Arra	ay Family		RAM	AC Array Family	
nmary						
unced 06/94 and 06/9	5			RAMAC (2) Array DASD ('	9391') RAMAC (2) Array Subsy	stem ('939
RAMAC (2) Arra	ay DASD'			DASD units, attach to 3990-6 and 3990-3 (not RAMA	DASD subsystem, direct attach to 'all C 2) 3 and 4.5 MB parallel	, ESCON
		d (RAMAC 2 on		DLSE (4 path access) coexistence with 339		
Appears as	3390-3s (	or 3380s, 07/96	)	Logical (S/W) view: Ful	ly transparent as	
		ement or coexis Performance'	stence	3390-3   (2 / B13 dra 3380   (4 / B23 dra	wer) (4/ or 3990-2/3380-K (3/	B13 drawer B23 drawer B13 drawer
Performance-wi not supported	se requires before VSE/E	support of DASD-Fas SA 1.3	st-Write (DFW),	Physical view:	+ CACHE,REPORT cmd	B23 drawer accepted
RAMAC (2) Arra	ay Subsyst	em'		9391 Array Rack	9394 Array Controll 4/8 channels	er
Attaches to	all proces	sors/type of cha	annels	-	64 MB-2 GB cac	
		(B13 drawers		216 9392 Array Drawe	rs 216 9395 Array Draw attery protected = non-volatile	
		3 drawers, 09/9		4 3.5" Disk	Drives (HDA), SCSI-2 (FBA) , 4.0 GB (B23 drawer)	,
Suited as 33			-	512	K HDA cache arate path to drawer cache	
'More cost	effective s	olution'			and the source of the	
				Caching functions: All 3990–3/6 functio	ns Nearly all 3990-3/6	functions
Common Charac	cteristics					
RAID-5 plus	Dynamic	Sparing		RAID implementation:	RAID-5	
- Minimized p	lanned and u	nplanned outages			ic Sparing Option ic Disk Reconstruct (B23 RAMAC	2 only)
- Non-disrupt		ves per drawer	,	S/W Support:		
		ves per drawer vice level buffer		(Native de VSE/ESA (1.2*), 1.3,	vice type support required) 2.1 VSE/SP 4.1\$, VSE/ESA 1	18 (2200-
Drawer cach				VSE/ESA (1.2*), 1.3,	VSE/ESA 1.2\$, 1.3, 2.	1, 2.2
<ul> <li>Battery pro</li> <li>'Non-volati</li> </ul>	tected:	ta have been writte	an to DASD		required/highly recommended N62330, PTF UN68459)	
Up to 16 dra					P 3.5 + SPE required requires VSE DFW support, not a	
		B13/B23 drawe	ers)		-DFW ERP is done fully transpar	
				WKITE HIL GEVICE ENG	s given only when data in 9395	drawer cac
	Copyright IB		G.9	WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM	drawer cacl
		y Family	G.9	WK/HJU 2001-07-15		
RAM	AC Arra	y Family	G.9	WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM AC Array Family	
RAM	AC Arra	y Family	6.9	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance A	Copyright IBM AC Array Family	G.1
IAC Family, 93	IAC Arra	y Family rawer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs	G.9	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A ,, Each drawer cac ,, Asynchronous dr	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destagi	G.1
RAM IAC Family, 939 B13 Drawer	IAC Arra 92/9395 Dr	y Family rawer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs		WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A ,, Each drawer cac ,, Asynchronous dr (data and parity)	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destagin	6.1 / ng
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs	IAC Arra 92/9395 Dr	y Family rawer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs		WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A ,, Each drawer cac ,, Asynchronous dr (data and parity) ,, Multiple concurre	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects the operates independently rawer staging and destagine ent transfers per drawer ca	6.1 / ng
RAM AC Family, 93 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3	rastar XP)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A ,, Each drawer cac ,, Asynchronous dr (data and parity) ,, Multiple concurre	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destaging ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA:	6.1 / ng
RAM AC Family, 93 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr	rastar XP)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / ,, Each drawer cac ,, Asynchronous dr (data and parity) ,, Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer,	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destaging ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer	<sub>6.1</sub> / ng ache
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem	n Only)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / ,, Each drawer cac ,, Asynchronous dr (data and parity) ,, Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer,	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destaging ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA:	<sub>6.1</sub> / ng ache
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array DASD	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3	n Only)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / ,, Each drawer cac ,, Asynchronous dr (data and parity) ,, Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, ,, Cache bit setting if beneficial	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destaging ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer	G.1 / ng ache r level,
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAS Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC 2 Array DASD RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC 2 Array Sub	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 ystem bsystem	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem	nastar XP) m Only) ASD at 3990-6	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / ,, Each drawer cac ,, Asynchronous dr (data and parity) ,, Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, ,, Cache bit setting if beneficial	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects the operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawer statistics on drawer level prov	G.1 / ng ache r level,
RAM AC Family, 93 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC 4 Array Subs RAMAC 4 Array Subs	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 ystem s, part 2/2	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array S	n Only) ASD at 3990-6 Subsystem	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / , Each drawer cac: , Asynchronous dr (data and parity) , Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, , Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache , High 'cache-to-ba	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects the operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawer statistics on drawer level prov	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 ystem s, part 2/2	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA	n Only) ASD at 3990-6 Subsystem	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / , Each drawer cac: , Asynchronous di (data and parity) , Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, , Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache , High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2%	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects the operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawe statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1%	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3)
RAM AC Family, 93 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC 4 Array Subs RAMAC 2 Array Subs	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-3/6 ystem bystem s, part 2/2	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Uitr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array S 4 x 3380 vols	n Only) ASD at 3990-6 Subsystem	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / , Each drawer cac , Asynchronous dr (data and parity) , Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, , Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache , High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% , CKD/FBA conver	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects the operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawer statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1%	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC 2 Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC 2 Array Subs Attaches to	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 s, part 2/2 at 3990-6 on	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Uitr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array S 4 x 3380 vols	n Only) ASD at 3990-6 Subsystem	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A " Each drawer cack " Asynchronous dir (data and parity) " Multiple concurre 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, " Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache " High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% " CKD/FBA conver " Parity data only of	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects the operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawe statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.12 sion in drawer cache is voluments exist within drawers and H	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC Array DASD 1 vol = 3339 3380	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 D at 3990-6 system s, part 2/2 at 3990-6 on -cyl (3380	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array S 4 x 3380 vols 4 x 3380 vols	n Only) ASD at 3990-6 Subsystem	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / , Each drawer cac , Asynchronous dr (data and parity) , Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, , Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache , High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% , CKD/FBA conver	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects the operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawe statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.12 sion in drawer cache is voluments exist within drawers and H	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC Array DASD 1 vol = 3339 3380	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 D at 3990-6 system s, part 2/2 at 3990-6 on -cyl (3380	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array S 4 x 3380 vols 4 x 3380 vols (4 x 3380 vols	nastar XP) m Only) ASD at 3990-6 Subsystem (09/96)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / , Each drawer cac: , Asynchronous dr (data and parity) , Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, , Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache , High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% , CKD/FBA conver , Parity data only of , 512K HDA cache - RPS miss avo	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destaging ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawer statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1% sion in drawer cache is vo exist within drawers and H s used for bidance (read/write)	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC Array Subs RAMAC Array DASD 1 vol = 3339 3380	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 ystem bsystem s, part 2/2 at 3990-6 on -cyl (3380 rmance Cl	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array S 4 x 3380 vols 4 x 3380 vols HDA 0664 19 9392/9395	nastar XP) m Only) ASD at 3990-6 Subsystem (09/96) HDA 34320 in 9392/9395	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / , Each drawer cac: , Asynchronous dr (data and parity) , Multiple concurrer 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, , Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache , High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% , CKD/FBA conver , Parity data only of , 512K HDA cache - RPS miss avo	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects the operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawe statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1% sion in drawer cache is vo exist within drawers and H s used for	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC 2 Array Subs Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD 1 vol = 3339 3380 Physical Perfo	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 ystem bsystem s, part 2/2 at 3990-6 on -cyl (3380 rmance Cl	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array DA A x 3380 vols 4 x 3380 vols Ly (07/96) -K=2655 cyl) haracteristics HDA 0664	nastar XP) m Only) ASD at 3990-6 Subsystem (09/96)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A " Each drawer caci " Asynchronous dr (data and parity) " Multiple concurre <sup>1</sup> for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, " Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache " High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% " CKD/FBA conver " Parity data only of " 512K HDA cache - RPS miss avo - sequential pro-	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawe statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1% sion in drawer cache is vo exist within drawers and H s used for bidance (read/write) estage read data	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast IDAs
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC 2 Array Subs Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD 1 vol = 3339 3380 Physical Perfo	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 n1y) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 ot 3390-6 ot 3380 rmance Cl 0-K 3390	y Family         awer Types         B23 Drawer         4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr         4 x 3390-3         (Array Subsystem         RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array S         4 x 3380 vols         4 x 3380 vols         1y (07/96)         -K=2655 cyl)         haracteristics         -3       HDA 0664 In 9392/9395 B13 drawer         2.0 (tot)	HDA 34320 in 09/96) HDA 34320 in 9392/9395 B23 drawer 4.0 (tot)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A " Each drawer caci " Asynchronous dr (data and parity) " Multiple concurre <sup>1</sup> for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, " Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache " High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% " CKD/FBA conver " Parity data only of " 512K HDA cache - RPS miss avo - sequential pro-	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destaging ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawer statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1% sion in drawer cache is vo exist within drawers and H s used for bidance (read/write)	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast IDAs
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC Array DASD 1 vol = 3339 3380 Physical Perfo 338 GB/actuator 1. Tracks/cyl. 1	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 on t 3990-6 at 3990-6 on -cy1 (3380 rmance Cl 0-K 3390 89 2.83 5 15	y Family           awer Types           B23 Drawer           4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr           4 x 3390-3           (Array Subsystem           RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array SUB           4 x 3380 vols           4 x 3380 vols           1y (07/96)           -K=2655 cyl)           maracteristics           -3           HDA 0664 in 9392/9395 B13 drawer           2.0 (tot) 1.4 (net) 15	HDA 34320 in 09/96) HDA 34320 in 9392/9395 B23 drawer 4.0 (tot) 2.8 (net) 15	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A " Each drawer caci " Asynchronous dr (data and parity) " Multiple concurre <sup>1</sup> for each logical <sup>6/7</sup> for B13 drawer, " Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache " High 'cache-to-ba <sup>e.g.</sup> 0.5% up to 2% " CKD/FBA conver " Parity data only of " 512K HDA cache - RPS miss avo - sequential pro-	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawe statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1% sion in drawer cache is vo exist within drawers and H s used for bidance (read/write) estage read data alancing for all logical vol	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast IDAs
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAS Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASS RAMAC 2 Array DASS RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 ystem bsystem s, part 2/2 at 3990-6 on -cyl (3380 rmance Cl 0-K 3390 89 2.83 5 5 3339	y Family awer Types B23 Drawer 4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr 4 x 3390-3 (Array Subsystem RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array DA RAMAC 2 Array S 4 x 3380 vols 4 x 3380 vols Ly (07/96) -x=2655 cyl) haracteristics 13 drawer 2.0 (tot) 1.4 (net)	HDA 34320 in 9392/9395 B23 drawer 4.0 (tot) 2.8 (net)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAMA Other Performance A " Each drawer caci " Asynchronous dir (data and parity) " Multiple concurre 1 for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, " Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache " High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% " CKD/FBA conver " Parity data only of " 512K HDA cache - RPS miss avo - sequential pro " Automatic load b a drawer The distribution of 5 down") gives autom	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destagin ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawe statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1% sion in drawer cache is vo exist within drawers and H s used for bidance (read/write) estage read data	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast IDAs
RAM AC Family, 939 B13 Drawer 4 x 2 GB HDAs Simulated Device 2 x 3390-3 3 x 3380-K (Array Subsystem o Attaches to RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC 2 Array Subs RAMAC	AC Arra 92/9395 Dr s, part 1/2 nly) at 3990-3/6 D at 3990-6 ystem bsystem s, part 2/2 at 3990-6 on -cyl (3380 rmance Cl 0-K 3390 89 2.83 5 3359 0 15.0	y Family         awer Types         B23 Drawer         4 x 4 GB HDAs (Ultr         4 x 3390-3         (Array Subsystem         RAMAC 2 Array DA         RAMAC 2 Array DA         x 3380 vols         4 x 3380 vols         4 x 3380 vols         1y (07/96)         -K=2655 cyl)         hda 0664 in 9392/9395 B13 drawer         2.0 (tot)         1.4 (net)         1.668	HDA 34320 in 9592/9595 B23 drawer 4.0 (tot) 2.8 (net) 1.5 3339	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 RAM/ Other Performance / " Each drawer caci " Asynchronous dir (data and parity) " Multiple concurre <sup>1</sup> for each logical 6/7 for B13 drawer, " Cache bit setting if beneficial No additional cache " High 'cache-to-ba e.g. 0.5% up to 2% " CKD/FBA conver " Parity data only of " 512K HDA cache - RPS miss avo - sequential pro " Automatic load b a drawer The distribution of 5 down <sup>1</sup> gives autom of a drawer.	Copyright IBM AC Array Family Aspects he operates independently rawer staging and destaging ent transfers per drawer ca volume on HDA + 1 per HDA: 6/8 for B23 drawer s also exploited on drawer statistics on drawer level prov ackstore-ratio' (RAMAC 1 Array Subs.) vs 0.1% sion in drawer cache is vo exist within drawers and H s used for bidance (read/write) estage read data alancing for all logical vol tracks of a volume across all H	G.1 / ng ache r level, ided (3990-3) ery fast IDAs

Copyright IBM

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

G.11

G.12

RAMAC Array Family	RAMAC Array Family
Overall Performance	
<ul> <li>The newer the VSE release, the more cache performance functions are supported (Native ECKD channel programs required)</li> </ul>	RAMAC Array Family cache sizes
'Under most circumstances, RAMAC (1) can offer significant performance improvements, in both response time and throughput, when compared to 3990 subsystems commonly installed today (1994).	<ul> <li>Select at least 128 MB RAMAC (1) cache, if possible use 256 MB on the subsystem level</li> <li><sup>64</sup> MB in general is too small for READ and WRITE caching. Note that a fixed part of the cache is used for control informati (refer to PTD)</li> </ul>
This should be generally true for typical 3990 cache sizes (32-128MB) and workloads with reasonable cache characteristics (>30% read hits).'	<ul> <li>Select at least 256 MB RAMAC 2 cache</li> </ul>
, Performance Measurement Results in	Required due to twice the DASD capacity.
'RAMAC Array Family Performance White Paper' For RAMAC 2 (discussed later) refer to RAM2PERF PACKAGE	Refer to RAMAC 2 charts
"Notes	Predictive Track Table (PTT)
Measurement results shown are for MVS workloads (IMS, TSO, DB2).	<ul> <li>Predictive Track Table is a table with entries for each logical track</li> </ul>
DASD/IO response times shown as function of I/O rates are very similar for VSE, since	in order to optimize performance
VSE/ESA itself uses optimal ECKD channel programs	<ul> <li>Size of PTT is reducing effective cache size by some amount</li> <li>This is of specific interest for RAMAC Array Family, if only 64M cache size is selected</li> </ul>
m i RAMAC does not care by which operating	<ul> <li>PTT is being built for RAMAC Array Subsystem at startup and when new drawers are added (a minor impact).</li> </ul>
system an SSCH was issued	(Similar aspects apply to 3990–6).
RAMAC Array DASD PTFs	RAMAC Array DASD PTFs
-	RAMAC Array DASD PTFs
VSE/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (RO means record 0)	RAMAC Array DASD PTFs         VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)
VSE/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (RO means record 0)	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)
VSE/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (RO means record O) benefit from it, or RVA " Performance impact	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performan with RAMAC Array DASD (and other I/O subsystems, like RVA-2). Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs
VSE/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (R0 means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact Add'tl physical I/Os to R0-record for parity Is independent of the type of operating system,	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performan- with RAMAC Array DASD (and other I/O subsystems, like RVA-2). Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).
VSE/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (R0 means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact Add'tl physical I/Os to R0-record for parity Is independent of the type of operating system, but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3. Also to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e.	VM/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performan- with RAMAC Array DASD (and other I/O subsystems, like RVA-2). Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95). This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order t
VSE/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (RO means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact Add'tl physical VOs to RO-record for parity Is independent of the type of operating system, but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3.	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)           The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performany with RAMAC Array DASD (and other I/O subsystems, like RVA-2).           Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).           This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order to show that a problem area has been identified           Product         APAR         PTF           VSE/VSAM for VM 2.2.0         VM58884         UV90734         R0 fix for 9391
VSE/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (RO means record D) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact Add'tl physical I/Os to RO-record for parity Is independent of the type of operating system, but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3. Also to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e. the 'predictive track table' (PTT) entry exists for the track.	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)         The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performanwith RAMAC Array DASD (and other I/O subsystems, like RVA-2).         Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).         This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order to show that a problem area has been identified         VEZ/VSAM for VM 2.2.0 VM58884 UV90734 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " 2.1.0 " UV90733         VM/ESA 1.2.1
VSE/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (RO means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact Add'tl physical I/Os to RO-record for parity Is independent of the type of operating system, but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3. Also to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e. the 'predictive track table' (PTT) entry exists for the track. RAMAC Array Subsystem does not need this, since PTT built faster Format Writes (i.e. not update writes) - e.g. VSAM Initial Load and CA-splits, file extensions or Restores, SAM writes	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)         The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performanwith RAMAC Array DASD (and other 1/0 subsystems, like RVA-2).         Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).         This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order to show that a problem area has been identified         VSE/VSAM for VM 2.2.0 VM58884 UV90734 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " 2.1.0 "         VM/ESA 1.2.2         VM59200 UM27170 R0 fix for TDSK
VSE/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (RO means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact Add'tl physical I/Os to RO-record for parity Is independent of the type of operating system, but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3. Also to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e. the 'predictive track table' (PTT) entry exists for the track. RAMAC Array Subsystem does not need this, since PTT built faster Format Writes (i.e. not update writes) - e.g. VSAM Initial Load and CA-splits, file extensions or Restores, SAM writes	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)         The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performanwith RAMAC Array DASD (and other 1/0 subsystems, like RVA-2).         Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).         This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order the show that a problem area has been identified         VM/ESA for VM 2.2.0 VM58884 UV90734 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " 2.1.0 " UV90734 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " 2.1.1 " UV90734 R0 fix for TDSK VM/ESA 1.2.2 VM5910 UM27170 R0 fix for TDSK VM/ESA 1.2.2
VSE/ESA RO Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (RO means record D) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact Add'tl physical I/Os to RO-record for parity Is independent of the type of operating system, but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3. Also to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e. the 'predictive track table' (PTT) entry exists for the track. RAMAC Array Subsystem does not need this, since PTT built faster Format Writes (i.e. not update writes) - e.g. VSAM Initial Load and CA-splits, file extensions or Restores, SAM writes	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)           The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performan with RAMAC Array DASD (and other 1/0 subsystems, like RVA-2).           Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).           This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order t show that a problem area has been identified           VSE/VSAM for VM 2.2.0 VM58884 UV90734 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " 2.1.0 " UV90734 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " 2.1.0 VM59200 UM27170 R0 fix for TDSK VM/ESA 1.2.1 VM59119 UM27058 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT
<pre>VSE/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (R0 means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact     Add'tl physical I/Os to R0-record for parity     Is independent of the type of operating system,     but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact     RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3.     Also to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e.     the 'predictive track table' (PTI) entry exists for the track.     RAMAC Array Subsystem does not need this, since PTI built faster     Format Writes (i.e. not update writes)         - e.g. VSAM Initial Load and CA-splits, file extensions         or Restores, SAM writes , Performance PTFS     APAR DY43335, PTF UD49325/49332     Setting of 'Regular R0 Data Format' (Byte 7 Bit 5) in DX         supervisor (for all VSE components) and in SA-FASTCOPY</pre>	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)         The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performan with RAMAC Array DASD (and other 1/0 subsystems, like RVA-2).         Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs         (Status here is as of 03/09/95).         This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order t show that a problem area has been identified         VSE/VSAM for VM 2.2.0 VM58884 UV90733 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " " 2.1.0 " UV90733 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " VM/ESA 1.2.1         VM59200 UM27170 R0 fix for 7DSK UV953 1.2.1         VM59119 UM27058 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT
<pre>VSE/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (R0 means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact     Add'tl physical I/Os to R0-record for parity     Is independent of the type of operating system,     but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact     RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3.     Also to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e.     the 'predictive track table' (PTI) entry exists for the track.     RAMAC Array Subsystem does not need this, since PTI built faster     Format Writes (i.e. not update writes)         - e.g. VSAM Initial Load and CA-splits, file extensions         or Restores, SAM writes , Performance PTFS     APAR DY43335, PTF UD49325/49332     Setting of 'Regular R0 Data Format' (Byte 7 Bit 5) in DX         by supervisor (for all VSE components) and in SA-FASTCOPY     (not required if Write Track Deperation set in LR)     Applicable to VSE/ESA 1.2 (pre-req UD90367/90368) and VSE/ESA     1.3 (pre-req UD929249220). </pre>	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)         The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performan with RAMAC Array DASD (and other 1/0 subsystems, like RVA-2).         Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).         This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order t show that a problem area has been identified         Description         VSE/VSAM for VM 2.2.0 VM58884 UV90733 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " " 2.1.0 " UV90733 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " " " 2.1.0 UM2710 R0 fix for TDSK UV9716 R0 fix for TDSK UV9784 1.2.1 UM59200 UM27170 R0 fix for TDSK UV9784 1.2.1 UM57169 UM27157 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT         VSAM B/R Performance PTF (RAMAC Array DASD)         .         APAR DY43414 (PTF UD49333) for VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4         This PTF sets the beginning of the extent address in the DEFINE
<pre>VSE/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (R0 means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA  , Performance impact     Add'tl physical I/Os to R0-record for parity     Is independent of the type of operating system,     but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize)  , Areas of performance impact     RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3.     Aiso to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e.     the 'predictive track table' (PTT) entry exists for the track.     RAMAC Array Subsystem does not need this, since PTT built faster     Format Writes (i.e. not update writes)         - e.g. VSAM Initial Load and CA-splits, file extensions         or Restores, SAM writes  , Performance PTFS      APAR DY43335, PTF UD49325/49332     Setting of 'Regular R0 Data Format' (Byte 7 Bit 5) in DX         by supervisor (for all VSE components) and in SA-FASTCOPY         (not required if Write Track Operation set in LR)     Applicable to VSE/ESA 1.2 (pre-req UD90367/90368) and VSE/ESA         1.3 (pre-req UD9219/49220). VSE/ESA 1.4/2.1 both include that         PT. Make sure VM AM24096 is applied for VM MDC  , Corresponding R0 PTFs for ADABAS from SAG</pre>	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)         The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performan with RAMAC Array DASD (and other 1/0 subsystems, like RVA-2).         Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).         This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order t show that a problem area has been identified         VE/VSAM for VM 2.2.0 VM58884 UV90734 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " " 2.1.0 "         VM/ESA 1.2.1 VM59200 UM27170 R0 fix for TDSK UM27058 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT         VM/ESA 1.2.1 VM59119 UM27058 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT         VSAM B/R Performance PTF (RAMAC Array DASD)         VMAPA DY43414 (PTF UD49333) for VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4         This PTF sets the beginning of the extent address in the DEFINE
<pre>VSE/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD) Applies primarily to 3990-3, but also to 3990-6 (R0 means record 0) benefit from it, or RVA , Performance impact     Add'tl physical I/Os to R0-record for parity     Is independent of the type of operating system,     but impact depends on the track layout (blocksize) , Areas of performance impact     RAMAC Array DASD 9391/9392 attached to 3990-3.     Aiso to 3990-6, but only until track was referenced once, i.e.     the 'predictive track table' (PTI) entry exists for the track.     RAMAC Array Subsystem does not need this, since PTI built faster     Format Writes (i.e. not update writes)         - e.g. VSAM Initial Load and CA-splits, file extensions         or Restores, SAM writes , Performance PTFs     APAR DY43335, PTF UD49325/49332     Setting of 'Regular R0 Data Format' (Byte 7 Bit 5) in DX         by supervisor (for all VSE components) and in SA-FASTCOPY         (not required if Write Track Operation set in LR)     Applicable to VSE/ESA 1.2 (pre-req UD90367/90368) and VSE/ESA     1.3 (pre-req UD9219/49220). VSE/ESA 1.4/2.1 both include that     PTF. Make sure VM APAR VM60996 is applied for VM MDC , Corresponding R0 PTFs for ADABAS from SAG</pre>	VM/ESA R0 Performance PTFs (RAMAC Array DASD)         The following is a list of PTFs required for optimal VM/ESA performance with RAMAC Array DASD (and other 1/0 subsystems, like RVA-2).         Refer to latest VM/ESA documentation for updates and non-performance related PTFs (Status here is as of 03/09/95).         This list includes APARs for which PTFs may not exist yet, in order the show that a problem area has been identified         VE/VSAM for VM 2.2.0 VM58884 UV90734 R0 fix for 9391 DASD " " " 2.1.0 "         VM/ESA 1.2.1         VM/ESA 1.2.1         VM/ESA 1.2.1         VM/S200 UM27170 R0 fix for TDSK         VM/ESA 1.2.1         VM/S210 UM27159 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT         VM/ESA 1.2.1         VM/S23 1.2.1         VM/S23 1.2.1         VM/S23 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT         VM/ESA 1.2.1         VM/S23 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT         VM/S23 R0 fix for CMS FORMAT         VM/ESA 1.2.1

### RAMAC Array DASD (9391)

#### RAMAC Array DASD and Intensive Sequential Writes

- " Volume RESTORE is a very MB intensive write activity (or e.g. LIBRARIAN FORMAT CKD Library)
- 3990-3/6 DASD Fast Write (DFW) is a pre-req for RAID-5 write operations
- " RAID-5 Write penalty will be hidden as long as data can be written immediately into NVS, but ...

If NVS fills up after many MBs written, the write hit ratio may go down:

Write caching cannot be as effective as it normally is, since cache/NVS size exhausted by being 'physical device bound', i.e. the physical device(s) itself becomes the bottleneck

- " 3990-6 has a more sophisticated DFW implementation than 3990-3 (NVS destaging implementation for RAMAC Array DASD)
- " Conclusions
  - 1 Bigger NVS sizes will help for such cases
  - I RAMAC Array DASD with intensive sequential writes may show lower performance for 3990-3 than for 3990-6
  - I Performance results for this kind are not representative for overall DASD performance
  - 1 3990-6 is much better suited than 'old' 3990-3

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

## RAMAC Array Subsystem (9394) ...

### RAMAC Array Subsystem Performance Hints

- Ù Blocksize of 4K or larger is optimal.
- For smaller blocksizes, RAMAC Array DASD with 3990-6 is the best suited alternative
- For WRITE hits, about 3 to 4 msec more time is required vs 3990-3/6

Data have to be transferred to the non-volatile drawer cache first This may become a problem, if e.g. logging was already a critical point with 3990-3/6 cached subsystems, using DFW (e.g. the SAP R/2 Update transaction or CICS logging)

Sequential bits highly beneficial for massive sequential operations

RAMAC Array Subsystem avoids that massive sequential data w/o a SEQuential indication in DEFINE EXTENT can flood the cache. With SEQuential bit, all data are fully cached, but discarded early

#### VSAM PTF for Format WRITEs

**Ù** Make sure VSAM PTFs UD49763 are installed Solves APAR DY43836

#### RAMAC Array Subsystem Microcode

Very recent observations with a VSE customer in Italy: U-code level EC 29119 showed much better I/O performance than level EC 29118c

(especially sequential performance for READ seemed to be affected). Contact IBM to get info on latest available u-code level

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

G.19

w

G.17

### RAMAC Array Subsystem (9394)

### Statistics for Subsystem Cache

- **Ù** CACHE UNIT=cuu,REPORT provides cache statistics for device cuu
  - " Same as for 3990-3 and 3990-6
    - Refer e.g. to 'DASD Caching in General' part
  - " Caution:
    - BYPass Cache counter erroneously is increased, if record caching is set (e.g. for DL/1, SQL/DS by VSAM)

In RAMAC Array Subsystem u-code level B482658 this reporting problem is solved

" CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS NOT accepted Not required since all functions in H/W enabled by default

**Ù VM/ESA statistics for RAMAC Array Subsystem** 

RAMAC Array Subsystem cache statistics can be obtained by VM/ESA, but only if the following VM APARs/PTFs have been applied:

VM59200 UM27169 for VM/ESA 1.2.1 UM27170 for VM/ESA 1.2.2 VM59341 UM27152 for VMPRF 1.2.0/1.2.1

The latter PTF is for VMPRF and required to format the cache statistics

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM

G.18

### RAMAC Array Subsystem (9394) ...

#### RAMAC Array Subsystem ADDs

	Emulation Mode		
		990-2/ 580-K	3990-2/ 3390-3
/SE Release	parallel	ESCON	parallel+ESCON
/SE/SP 4.1 /SE/ESA 1.1 /SE/ESA 1.2.0 (a) /SE/ESA 1.2.0 (b) /SE/ESA 1.2.1-3 /SE/ESA 1.3/1.4 /SE/ESA 2.1 & up	3380 (c) 3380 (c) 3380 (c) ECKD ECKD ECKD ECKD	n/s n/s ECKD ECKD ECKD ECKD	n/s n/s ECKD ECKD ECKD ECKD
and WSC Flash	node must b ault settin Lash 9553.3 9507 tions for F ADD 'EML'	pe set. 1g is non-: 3 '9394 Syn RAMAC Array parameter	sync mode. nchr. Settings' y Subsystems (9394 ,
<ul> <li>'EML' does NOT</li> <li>In all cases a except where Ai</li> <li>Holds also for for VM/VSE min</li> </ul>	specificly ove, devic DDed as 338 VM/VSE dec	/ apply to ce type '60 30 dicated dev	RAMAC E'(ECKD) used, vices,
Consequenc (e.g. V	es of ADD of SE/ESA 1.3		riations
ADD cuu, 3380 ADD cuu, 3380,EML ADD cuu, ECKD	except (overrui Never uso Gives EC (device	Ling depen e, forces ( (D channel type not (	ed at IPL time ds on attachment) CKD! programs, if RAMA changed by VSE)
DD cuu, ECKD,EML	Forces El	CKD channe.	l programs

### RAMAC Array Subsystem (9394) ...

The following detailed info (very similar to WSC flash 9507) has been written for the information of technical specialists and is courtesy of Axel Pieper (VSE, Boeblingen) and Bob Shomler (RAMAC, San Jose).

Additional Considerations for 3380-K Emulation:

RAMAC Array Subsystem, including 3380-K format, is designed to run with ECKD channel programs. For VSE/ESA release levels that have ECKD support, all RAMAC Subsystem DASD including 3380-K format should normally be defined to VSE by 'ADD cuu.ECKD'.

derined to vsE by 'ADD cuurELKD'. However, some vendor program products and applications that work with 3380-K are sensitive to the device type code in VSE's physical unit block (PUB). These programs look for a '6C' and may not recognize the '6E' that VSE will place there for ECKD devices.

Other software may have a similar sensitivity to the device type in VSE's DTF. The DTF may contain a device type of 0C or 0E, with the 'C' or 'E' being set the same as the 'C' or 'E' in the PUB. VSE will put the value from the DASD's Read Device Characteristics data in the DTF when the device is recognized as ECKD. This will be 0E for 3380-K. VSE will put CC in the DTF for 3880 when it is not recognized as an ECKD device. VSE determines that a DASD is ECKD or CKD based on the ADD statement and the DASD's indication that it is capable of nonsync operation. These combinations are shown in the table at the end of this section.

(Note: The 6E in PUB and OE in DTF will be present for any nonsync-capable ECKD DASD, real devices and RAMAC emulated devices.)

An 'ADD cuu,3380,EML' statement may be used to force 6C into the PUB and OC into the DTF to enable this software to run. However there are some corollary effects and requirements that will be explained here.

An effect of having a 6C in the PUB is that VSE/ESA will generate CKD channel programs rather than the more efficient ECKD channel programs, and it will not convert application CKD channel programs to ECKD as it will do for an ECKD device.

VSE/ESA also will separately present Channel End and Device End status on (CKD) DASD write operations, with the application being posted complete at Channel End time. For ECKD devices (PUB = 66), VSE will hold Channel End to be presented together with Device End to the application, posting the application I/O complete at Device End time (Device End posting).

Some application software will not be able to properly handle separate presentation of Channel End without Device End. This may be software that also requires a 6C in the PUB entry, or there may be software not sensitive to 6C/6E that could have this problem.

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### RAMAC Array Subsystem (9394) ...

#### Additional Notes:

Do not set synchronous-1 in VPD. VSE/ESA 1.2.x and VSE/ESA 1.3 without the fix for APAR DY43207 will insert a 6C in a 3380 PUB entry as a result of RAMAC Array Subsystem VPD synchronous-1 or synchronous-2 being set.

Synchronous-1 should not be set in VPD, since 6C in the PUB will inhibit ECKD merged Channel End and Device End posting, which will cause a potential data integrity exposure when exception conditions are reported with Device End.

For programs that presently use the 6C in the PUB to identify 3380 device type for track capacity information, VSE has a GETVCE service that can be used for this purpose, eliminating the need to interpret PUB content.

#### VSE ECKD Recognition, PUB, and DTF Values

The following table shows how VSE will see a 3380 RAMAC Array Subsystem DASD based on VPD mode and how the device is defined (ADDed) to VSE. Note that some of the combinations should not be used; this is just to show the VSE action for these combinations:

xx	device dependent (	0E for 3380s	s, 24/26/27/3	34 for	3390	-3/1/2/9s)
(3)	VSE 1.2.x and VSE VSE will force 338	0 (MSG0I71I)	)		-	
(2)	VSE 1.3 with fix f					
(1)	Nonsync VPD mode c			ned as	ECKD	(MSG1I71I)
Note	s:					
	ADD cuu,ECKD,EML	sync-l	ECKD	6E	0 C	
(2)	ADD cuu,ECKD	sync-l	ECKD	6E	0 C	
	ADD cuu,3380,EML	sync-2	CKD	6C	0 C	
	ADD cuu,3380	sync-2	CKD	6C	00	
(3)	ADD cuu,ECKD	svnc-2	CKD	6C	00	
(2)	ADD cuu,ECKD	svnc-2	ECKD	6E	xx	
(1)	ADD cuu,3380,EME	nonsync	ECKD	6E	XX	SPIIC CE/DE
	ADD cuu,ECKD ADD cuu,3380,EML	nonsync nonsync	ECKD	6E 6C	XX 0C	split CE/DE
Note	ADD statement	DASD VPD	VSE sees device as	PUB	DTF	PROBLEM

### RAMAC Array Subsystem (9394) ...

The RAMAC Array Subsystem can present some operation exceptions only at at Device End time, as is the case for any nonsynchronous DASD. Thus if it is necessary to force VSE to CKD mode (via 'ADD 3580,EML') then it also will be necessary to activate Device End posting for those DASD. Device End posting in VSE can be accomplished by one of three means:

Device End Posting can be explicitly requested by an application.
 RAMAC Subsystem synchronous-2 VPD mode may be set, but this will be effective only for RAMAC subsystem attached via parallel channels.
 Device End posting will be automatic for devices recognized as ECKD.

Option (1) may not be feasible for existing applications.

Option (2) does not help ESCON configurations, and on parallel channels the additional channel connect time can impact system performance, Option (3) would be the ideal choice, but is denied by the application software requirement for 6C in the PUB (or 0C in the DTF).

The remedy for these applications is an update for these programs to accept 6E in the PUB entry and 0E in the DTF. This will allow 3380 format DASD to be defined and operate as ECKD nonsync (ADD cuu,ECKD), avoiding CKD channel program and extended connect time performance impacts, and using the VSE Device End posting inherent in VSE ECKD support. The customer should contact the vendor or application maintainer to request an update to recognize 6E/DE (for device type identification or track capacity calculation), both for real nonsync devices and RAMAC emulated devices.

Capacity Calculation), both for real nonsync devices and KAMAC emulated devices. Until the application software can be updated to recognize 6E/OE, a workaround for a parallel channel attached RAMAC Subsystem is to ADD the DASD as 3380,EML and set synchronous-2 in RAMAC Array Subsystem VPD. The only workaround for ESCON is to define the DASD as 3580,EML, set the subsystem VPD to nonsynchronous, and either use option (1) above --request Device End posting (if feasible for the application) or request a temporary VSE patch as described below.

VSE development can provide a temporary patch for VSE/ESA 1.3 and 1.2 to force Device End posting for 3380 devices until application software can be updated to work with devices defined as ECKD, and recognize 6E in the PUB entry and 0E in a DTF. If needed, this should be requested from VSE development by software PMR for systems that have all of the three following conditions:

RAMAC Array Subsystem is attached via ESCON channels, or the performance impact of synchronous-2 operation prevents successful system operation

Any software running on that system requires a 6C PUB value or 0E DTF device type to run, and

Application-requested Device End posting is not (or cannot be) used.

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

G.21

G.22

## Copyright IBM **RAMAC and some Vendor Products**

#### **RAMAC** and some Vendor Products

Vendor/Product	Rel	Comments
ALTAI ZEKE	4.0.B 4.1.C	<ul> <li>DTF does not recognize 6E fix available</li> </ul>
CA DATACOM/DB VOLLIE RAMIS IDEAL	8.0 8.1 4.3 5.0 7.1.0 2.1	<ul> <li>fix available</li> <li>fix available</li> <li>no fix, out of service</li> <li>fix available (phase OLLE6100)</li> <li>fix: RA71174D,RA71180D</li> <li>RA71206D,RA71207D,RA71208D</li> <li>use VLSBKUP (not VLSUTSE)</li> <li>for Backup</li> </ul>
CINCOM SUPRA	1.2.5 1.2.6 1.3.5 2.6.0	fix: 942139,942140 fix: 942139,942140 fix: 942139,942140 fix: 942139,942140 + patch fix: 942139,942140 + patch
PHOENIX FALCON D/E	14.1	- no fixinstall 16.0
SAG ADABAS	5.x,6.x	refer to RAMAC Array DASD PTFs
Others?		

This table is updated based on available info. It can only be a hint for faster problem solution. Let us know if something is missing or wrong.

Thanks to all who provided patches and solved our common customers problems.

Copyright IBM

Contact the vendor for maintenance.

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

G.24

Major RAMAC 2 Performance Findings (vs RAMAC)          To achieve comparable performance, a larger amount of controller cache must be provided in some cases          At very large sizes of controller cache, RAMAC 2 performance may exceed that of RAMAC, despite twice as much data in each B23 drawer          At same big cache sizes, RAMAC 2 can outperform RAMAC in specific cases provided the same amount of active data is stored on each drawe         í       In practice, comparable performance to RAMAC         RAMAC 2 Cache Size Recommendations       Full (1) configurations (180 GB)         Full (1) configurations (180 GB)       RAMAC 2 configuration Cache size         Marray Subsystem model 2       216 MB         Array Subsystem model 3       128 MB (*)         3990-6 NVS size       > 16 MB often beneficial         * More internal paths available; size MB would be too costly       926 MAC 3 Array Storage         WW/HJU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       G26         RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details-        9390 Storage Control models         Single and Dual CU model       Single and Dual CU model
a larger amount of controller cache must be provided in some cases At very large sizes of controller cache, RAMAC 2 performance may exceed that of RAMAC, despite twice as much data in each B23 drawer At same big cache sizes, RAMAC 2 can outperform RAMAC in specific cases provided the same amount of active data is stored on each drawe f In practice, comparable performance to RAMAC RAMAC 2 Cache Size Recommendations Full (1) configurations (180 GB) Full (1) configurations (180 GB) Full (1) configurations (180 GB) WWHJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM G26 RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details 9390 Storage Control models Single and Dual CU model
<ul> <li>At very large sizes of controller cache, RAMAC 2 performance may exceed that of RAMAC, despite twice as much data in each B23 drawer</li> <li>At same big cache sizes, RAMAC 2 can outperform RAMAC in specific cases provided the same amount of active data is stored on each drawe</li> <li>In practice, comparable performance to RAMAC</li> <li>RAMAC 2 Cache Size Recommendations</li> <li>Full (1) configurations (180 GB)</li> <li><u>RAMAC 2 configuration</u> <u>Cache size</u> <u>Array DASD at 3990-6</u> <u>256 MB</u> <u>Array Subsystem model 2</u> <u>256 MB</u> <u>Array Subsystem model 2</u> <u>256 MB</u> <u>Array Subsystem model 3</u> <u>128 MB (*)</u> <u>3990-6 NVS size</u> <u>&gt; 16 MB often</u> <u>beneficial</u> * More internal paths available;</li> <li>WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM <u>626</u></li> <li><u>RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details-</u></li> <li><u>9390 Storage Control models</u> Single and Dual CU model</li> </ul>
RAMAC 2 performance may exceed that of RAMAC, despite twice as much data in each B23 drawer         , At same big cache sizes, RAMAC 2 can outperform RAMAC in specific cases         provided the same amount of active data is stored on each drawe         Í In practice, comparable performance to RAMAC         RAMAC 2 Cache Size Recommendations         Full (1) configurations (180 GB)         Full (1) configurations (180 GB)         WKHJU 2001-07-15 Capyright IBM (226         MAMAC 3 Array Storage         WKHJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM (226         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         gago Storage Control models         Single and Dual CU model
At same big cache sizes, RAMAC 2 can outperform RAMAC in specific cases provided the same amount of active data is stored on each drawe in practice, comparable performance to RAMAC <u>RAMAC 2 Cache Size Recommendations</u> Full (!) configurations (180 GB) <u>Tray DASD at 3990-6 256 MB Array Subsystem model 2 256 MB Array Subsystem model 3 128 MB (*) 3990-6 NVS size beneficial * More internal paths available, 512 MB would be too costly           WV/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         G26           RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details- () 9390 Storage Control models         Single and Dual CU model  </u>
Í In practice, comparable performance to RAMAC RAMAC 2 Cache Size Recommendations Full (!) configurations (180 GB) <u>RAMAC 2 configuration</u> <u>Cache size</u> <u>Array Subsystem model 2</u> <u>Array Subsystem model 2</u> <u>128 MB (*)</u> <u>3990-6 NVS size</u> <u>&gt; 16 MB often</u> <u>beneficial</u> * More internal paths available, <u>512 MB would be too costly</u> <u>WK/HJU 2001-07-15</u> <u>Copyright IBM</u> <u>G26</u> <u>RAMAC 3 Array Storage</u> <u>RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details-</u> , <u>9390 Storage Control models</u> Single and Dual CU model
RAMAC 2 Cache Size Recommendations         Full (!) configurations (180 GB)         Image: Configuration Cache size         Array DASD at 3990-6         256 MB       256 MB         Array Subsystem model 2       256 MB         Array Subsystem model 3       128 MB (*)         3990-6 NVS size       > 16 MB often         * More internal paths available,       512 MB would be too costly         WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM G26         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         Page Control models         Single and Dual CU model       Single and Dual CU model
RAMAC 2 configuration       Cache size         Array DASD at 3990-6       256 MB         Array Subsystem model 2       256 MB         Array Subsystem model 3       128 MB (*)         3990-6 NVS size       > 16 MB often         * More internal paths available,       > 16 MB often         * J12 MB would be too costly       \$ 16 MB often         * More internal paths available,       \$ 256 MB         * More internal paths available,       \$ 256 MB         * More internal paths available,       \$ 260 MB         * More internal paths available,       \$ 260 MB         * More internal paths available,       \$ 260 MB         WK/HJU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       \$ 626         RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details,       \$ 000 More details,         ,       9390 Storage Control models       \$ 000 More details,         Single and Dual CU model       \$ 000 More details,       \$ 000 Mare details,
Array DASD at 3990-6       256 MB         Array Subsystem model 2       256 MB         Array Subsystem model 3       128 MB (*)         3990-6 NVS size       > 16 MB often beneficial         * More internal paths available,       > 16 MB often beneficial         * More internal paths available,       > 12 MB would be too costly         WK/HJU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       G.26         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage control models          9390 Storage Control models       Single and Dual CU model
Array Subsystem model 2       256 MB         Array Subsystem model 3       128 MB (*)         3990-6 NVS size       > 16 MB often         * More internal paths available, 512 MB would be too costly       > 16 MB often         WK/HJU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       G.26         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         g390 Storage Control models         Single and Dual CU model
Array Subsystem model 3       128 MB (*)         3990-6 NVS size       > 16 MB often beneficial         * More internal paths available, 512 MB would be too costly         WK/HJU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM         G26         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         g390 Storage Control models         Single and Dual CU model
beneficial         * More internal paths available, 512 MB would be too costly         WK/HJU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM         G26         RAMAC 3 Array Storage         RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details-         ,,       9390 Storage Control models         Single and Dual CU model
* More internal paths available, 512 MB would be too costly      WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM G26      RAMAC 3 Array Storage      RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details-        9390 Storage Control models      Single and Dual CU model
RAMAC 3 Array Storage RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details- " 9390 Storage Control models Single and Dual CU model
RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details- " 9390 Storage Control models Single and Dual CU model
RAMAC 3 Array Storage -More details- " 9390 Storage Control models Single and Dual CU model
" 9390 Storage Control models
Single and Dual CU model
Model -001 -002
Cache size 256M-46 NVS size 32,64,128M #ESCON channels 4,8,12,16 2 x '-001' #addresses 128
#Storage Frames 1
" RAMAC 3 Storage Frame (9391-A30)
Contains 2 to 16 drawers
New High Speed Device Adapter (4 HSDAs)
11.9 MB/sec data rate at lower interface, between storage control and drawer (3x RAMAC 2)
Applies also to 3990–6 attachment (LIC update)
" 9392 B33 Drawer
4 9.1 GB HDDs, representing a RAID-5 array
22.7 GB effective capacity
Up to 8 logical volumes (3390-3) plus 3380 track format function 64 MB non-volatile drawer cache

### **RAMAC 3 Specific Performance Remarks**

#### Performance Aspects

#### " High Concurrency

All 4x16=64 HDDs of a frame can transfer (READ/WRITE) concurrently

" Ultrastar 2XP 9.1 GB disk drives (HDDs)

- Media data rate *	10.2 to 15.4 MB/sec
- Drive cache	1 MB (not 512 KB)
- Latency	4.17 msec
- Min seek (Read)	0.5 msec
- Avg seek (R/W)	8.5/10.5 msec
* (more data in the	outer zones)
-> 1.25 times the da	ata rate of Ultrastar XP

" Enhanced NVS Management in 3990-6 and 9390 with Branching WRITEs

When large amounts of sequential data are written (be it via 'Seq. Bit' or via Sequential Detect)...

the second copy of the data is directed into the nonvolatile drawer cache (instead of filling the NVS). This avoids NVS full conditions for other (random) WRITEs Transfer from the ESCON channel into subsystem cache and drawer cache is being done in a 'branching WRITE' manner.

### " Up to 8 logical volumes per drawer

On RAMAC 1/2, only 4 logical volumes were possible RAMAC 3 Size Recommendations

#### RECOM MINIMUM NDEL # Vols Total GB Cache NVS Cache NVS <=32 32-64 64-128 128-256 <=90 90-180 180-360 360-720 256M 512M 1G 2x 1G 32M 32M 64M 2x 64M 512M 1-2G 1-4G 2x(1-4G 32M 64M 64M 2x 128M RAMAC 3 Array Storage at 9390-001 or 3990-6 Configuration requires 9390-002 or 2 3990-6

\* Configuration requires 9390-002 or 2 3

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

## RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2) ...

RAMAC 3 Array Storage -Random Performance-

Configuration	Throughput	Response Time	
2x 3990-6, each 512M Cache 32M NVS 180G RAMAC 2	2x 275 IO/sec ລ 15 msec RT Total 550 IO/sec	Each 14 msec RT @ 250 IO/sec Total 500 IO/sec	
1x 9390-001 1G Cache 64M NVS 360G RAMAC 3	580 IO/sec ລ 15 msec RT	13 msec RT ລ 500 IO/sec	
1x 9390-001 4G Cache 128M NVS 360G RAMAC 3	770 IO/sec ລ 10 msec RT	7 msec RT ລ 500 IO/sec	
(Example for cac with 3:1 R/W 17 KB av 29% Seque	– OS/390 DB2 workload was used (Example for cache-unfriendly, random access)		

#### Í 'Equal or better performance at double capacity' (vs RAMAC 2, Array DASD or Subsystem)

More details on performance are contained in the RAMAC 3 White Paper (RAM3PERF), available to your IBM representative

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

G.31

G.29

## RAMAC 3 Performance (vs RAMAC 2)

RAMAC 3 Array Storage -Sequential Performance-

Measured Elapsed Times         Workload       RAMAC 2 Array DASD       RAMAC 3 Array         VSAM KSDS Seq READ (w/o Seq. Detect)       22 min       not applicable         VSAM KSDS Seq READ (w/ Seq. Detect)       13 min       7 min         QSAM Seq. WRITE       16 min       10 min         - 8 volumes active simultaneously across 2 drawers, 1500 cylinders used for each volume       18 Mb/sec ESCON channels         - 18 Mb/sec ESCON channels       -         - 0S/390 performance results       -         - VSL/VSAM can set SEQ indication for KSDS also SAM with ACB access (VSAM), but not SAM with DTF access (BAM)				
(w/o Seq. Detect)         VSAM KSDS Seq READ (w/ Seq. Detect)       13 min       7 min         QSAM Seq. WRITE       16 min       10 min         - 8 volumes active simultaneously across 2 drawers, 1500 cylinders used for each volume       18 Mb/sec ESCON channels         - 18 Mb/sec ESCON channels       - 05/390 performance results         - 05/390 performance results       - VSE/VSAM can set SEQ indication for KSDS also SAM with ACB access (VSAM),			RAMAC 3 Array	
VSAM KSDS Seq READ (W/ Seq. Detect) QSAM Seq. WRITE - 8 volumes active simultaneously across 2 drawers, 1500 cylinders used for each volume - 18 Mb/sec ESCO kohannels - 4K blocksize for VSAM READ, 27K for QSAM WRITE - 0S/390 performance results - VSE/VSAM can set SEQ indication for KSDS also SAM with ACB access (VSAM),	VSAM KSDS Seq READ	22 min	not applicable	
QSAM Seq. WRITE 16 min 10 min - 8 volumes active simultaneously across 2 drawers, 1500 cylinders used for each volume - 18 Mb/sec ESCON channels - 4K blocksize for VSAM READ, 27K for QSAM WRITE - 0S/390 performance results - VSE/VSAM can set SEQ indication for KSDS also SAM with ACB access (VSAM),	VSAM KSDS Seg READ	13 min	7 min	
<ul> <li>8 volumes active simultaneously across 2 drawers, 1500 cylinders used for each volume</li> <li>18 Mb/sec ESCON channels</li> <li>4K blocksize for VSAM READ, 27K for QSAM WRITE</li> <li>0S/390 performance results</li> <li>VSE/VSAM can set SEQ indication for KSDS also SAM with ACB access (VSAM),</li> </ul>		l6 min	10 min	
	1500 cylinders used for each volume - 18 Mb/sec ESCON channels - 4K blocksize for VSAM READ, 27K for QSAM WRITE - 0S/390 performance results - VSE/VSAM can set SEQ indication for KSDS also SAM with ACB access (VSAM).			
	IJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM		
U 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM	More	Info on RAMA	AC 3	
U 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM More Info on RAMAC 3				
More Info on RAMAC 3	IBM RAMAC 3 Overview (() Available to your IBM r IBM RAMAC 3 Array Stor IBM 3390-9390 Storage ( IBM RAMAC 3 Array Stor Red Book, SG24-4835-00, [his is a really excel]	Presentation Guide), epresentative (MKTT age Product Announce Control Introduction age (technical pre 12/96, 210 pages Lent book for technic	DOLS) ment, 96-09-10 (updated), GA32-1 sentation), ITSO cally interested p	

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

G.32

	RAMAC Virtual Array Storage Overview
PART H.	Overview on RVA Foils            \u03c0         RVA Summary         \u03c0         RVA Models         \u03c0         More RVA General Performance Aspects         \u03c0         RVA-2 Turbo Specifics         \u03c0         RVA-2 Turbo Performance
RAMAC Array Family, RVA	<ul> <li>Ù General Log-Structured File Aspects</li> <li>Ù RVA IXFP Program</li> <li>Ù IXFP DDSR for VM/VSE</li> <li>Ù RVA SnapShot 'Instant' Copy</li> <li>Ù IXFP/SnapShot for VM/VSE</li> <li>Ù IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA</li> </ul>
" RAMAC Virtual Array Storage 2	Detailed Technical Info
	ừ ITSO Redbooks
Includes the Models X-82 and X-83 RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC Array Subsystem RAMAC Array Storage (RAMAC 3) are discussed in the previous part RAMAC Electronic Array Storage RAMAC Scalable Array Storage are discussed in the next part	<ul> <li>'IBM RAMAC Virtual Array', ITSO Redbook, SG24-4951-00, 07/97, 475 pages</li> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array, PPRC and IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA', ITSO Redbook, SG24-5360-00 (01/99)</li> <li>To get ITSO red books, refer to http://www.redbooks.ibm.com</li> </ul>
WKHJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM H.1	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM H.2
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage 'RVA' (9393)	RAMAC Virtual Array Storage 'RVA' (9393)
	'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary- Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem.	
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary- Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem. More info is contained in - 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)</li> <li>Managed Array of Independent Disks</li> <li>'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space</li> <li>No predetermined location of tracks</li> </ul>
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary- Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem. More info is contained in - 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168 - 'IBM RVA Planning, Implement. and Usage Guide, GC26-7170	'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd) , Managed Array of Independent Disks 'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary- Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem. More info is contained in - 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168 - 'IBM RVA Planning, Implement. and Usage Guide, GC26-7170 Complements RAMAC Array Family - High capacity and performence - High availability - Low cost	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)</li> <li>" Managed Array of Independent Disks</li> <li>'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space</li> <li>No predetermined location of tracks         <ul> <li>('homeless tracks')</li> <li>í 'Log Structured File' system</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary- Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem. More info is contained in - 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168 - 'IBM RVA Planning, Implement. and Usage Guide, GC26-7170 ,, Complements RAMAC Array Family - High capacity and performence - High availability - Lowest footprint (RVA-2) Up to 1680 CB (offoctive) capacity	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)</li> <li>" Managed Array of Independent Disks</li> <li>'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space</li> <li>No predetermined location of tracks         <ul> <li>('homeless tracks')</li> <li>í 'Log Structured File' system</li> <li>Track directory is in replicated cache and also on disk (for safety reasons)</li> </ul> </li> <li>f Automatic load balancing across physical HDDs</li> <li>" Built-in compaction and compression of data</li> </ul>
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary- Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem. More info is contained in - 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168 - 'IBM RVA Planning, Implement. and Usage Guide, GC26-7170 Complements RAMAC Array Family - High capacity and performence - High availability - Low cost - Lowest footprint (RVA-2) Up to 1680 GB (effective) capacity (assumes a 3.6:1 compression ratio)	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)</li> <li>" Managed Array of Independent Disks         <ul> <li>'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space</li> <li>No predetermined location of tracks</li></ul></li></ul>
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary- Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem. More info is contained in - 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168 - 'IBM RVA Planning, Implement. and Usage Guide, GC26-7170 Complements RAMAC Array Family - High capacity and performence - High availability - Low cost - Lowest footprint (RVA-2) Up to 1680 GB (effective) capacity (assumes a 3.6:1 compression ratio) Refer to RVA Models Summary	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)</li> <li>Managed Array of Independent Disks         <ul> <li>'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space allocation of logical space/data to real space</li> <li>No predetermined location of tracks                 ('homeless tracks')</li></ul></li></ul>
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary- Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem. More info is contained in - 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168 - 'IBM RVA Planning, Implement. and Usage Guide, GC26-7170  Complements RAMAC Array Family - High capacity and performence - High availability - Lowest footprint (RVA-2)  Up to 1680 GB (effective) capacity (assumes a 3.6:1 compression ratio) Refer to RVA Models Summary  Managed Array of Independent Disks - Dynamic assignment of used storage - RID <sup>6</sup> (dual parity)  Appears as 3380s or 3390s, at 3990-3 with DFW - Single/double/triple capacity volumes - Flexible definitions	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)</li> <li>Managed Array of Independent Disks         <ul> <li>'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space</li> <li>No predetermined location of tracks</li></ul></li></ul>
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary-         Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem.         More info is contained in         • 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168         • 'IBM RVA Planning, Implement. and Usage Guide, GC26-7170            Complements RAMAC Array Family         • High capacity and performence         • High availability         • Lowest footprint (RVA-2)	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)         <ul> <li>Managed Array of Independent Disks</li> <li>'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space</li> <li>No predetermined location of tracks</li></ul></li></ul>
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage -Summary-         Product evolved from StorageTek's Iceberg 9200 Disk Array Subsystem.         More info is contained in         - 'IBM RVA Storage Introduction', GC26-7168         - 'IBM RVA Planning, Implement. and Usage Guide, GC26-7170            Complements RAMAC Array Family         - High capacity and performence         - High availability         - Lowest footprint (RVA-2)	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array -Summary- (cont'd)         <ul> <li>Managed Array of Independent Disks</li> <li>'Virtual Disk Architecture' (VDA), manages allocation of logical space/data to real space</li> <li>No predetermined location of tracks</li></ul></li></ul>

### RVA 9393 Model Summary

### **RVA 9393 Model Summary**

	RVA-1 RVA-2 -001 -002	RVA-2 Turbo -T42 -T82	RVA Turbo -X82 -X83
Announced	06/96 09/96	04/97	05/99 07/99
Effective disk capacity	160G -726G	160G 160G -726G -840G	160G 290G -840G -1680G
Max eff. cache	2G 3G	4G 6G	6G
#channels Paral. ESCON	16 8 or 16	- 8 or 16	16
#conc.chnl data X-fers	4	4 8	8
#log. devices	256	256	1024

#log.ESCON paths 32 ->128 128 128

Increased number of log. ESCON paths was retrofitted to the 'non-Turbo' models - X83 uses 9G HDDs, all others use 4.5G drives

Any RVA user/effective/nominal capacity is valid for - an average disk compression ratio of 3.6:1 - the recommended 75% Net Capacity Load

- 1 Performance/Capacity improved continuously over time
- **RAID-6 Disk Arrays** ,,

2 types of disk arrays

8 HDDs = 5 +2P +1S 16 HDDs =13 +2P +1S 80/160 GB 210/420 GB

2, 3, or 4 Disk Arrays in an RVA

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### **RAMAC Virtual Array Performance**

More RVA Performance Aspects

Effective usage of physical storage:

Only actual data is stored

unallocated space does not reserve capacity allocated space, but unused is not 'stored'

> space not occupied/reserved until data actually written

built-in data compression and compaction Data compressed before entering cache, 4 independent LZ compression engines

CKD/ECKD inter-record gaps need not be 'stored'

Likewise applies to the RAMAC Array Family

Intelligent freespace collection and mgmnt

Messages regarding available space start at 85% utilization of physical space (Net Capacity Load NCL

#### Fast and highly concurrent data transfers ,,

Up to 4/8 concurrent channel transfers, plus up to 8 operations w/o transfer (e.g. interpret channel programs, initiate cache miss resolution...)

Up to 14 concurrent transfers between cache and disk arrays Unit of staging/destaging is a full (logical) track

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

#### RVA 9393 Model Summary ...

#### 3.5" HDDs/disks used

•••

H.5

H.7

Capacity	4.5 GB	9.1 GB
Model: IBM Ultrastar	2XP SCSI	9LP ? SSA
Rotational Speed RPM Media data rate MB/sec (inner to outer)	7200 10.2 to 15.4	7200 11.5 to 22.4
Latency msec Minimum SEEK msec Avg SEEK msec Actuator buffer KB	4.2 0.5 7.5 1024	4.2 0.7 6.5 1024

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM

### **RAMAC Virtual Array Performance ...**

H.6

H.8

#### Other Performance Aspects (cont'd)

- **RAID-6 Dual Parity Architecture** 
  - Allows 2 simultaneous disk failures in 1 array (5+2, 13+2)
  - Updated data and parity always written to a new location, thus reducing RAID-5/-6 WRITE penalty
- Self tuning arrangement of data: •••

Tracks of a single logical volume are spread across physical HDDs, reducing the effect of 'hot spots'

Likewise applies to the RAMAC Array Family

- Sequential detect function ,,
- Highly efficient destaging

Updates are done to a new physical location Destaging tracks are collected into groups and bulk transferred

RVA-2 performance is equivalent to RVA with latest u-code

In fact, the following is the situation meanwhile (10/96):

Average (random) performance is better, sequential throughput is about 10% higher.

RAMAC 3 may give very slightly better performance than RVA-2 for comparable configurations

Refer also to the 'white paper': 'An Overview and Comparison of RVA-2, RAMAC 3 and RSA Performance' as RAMFAM package on MKTTOOLS disk, 96-11-04, 19 pages, available to your IBM representative

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

### **RVA-2** Turbo

### **RVA-2** Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance

#### Max. Sequential Throughput (MB/sec) Here only additional deltas to RVA-2 are addressed RVA-2 9393-002 VA-2 Turbo 9393-T42 PAWs Workload Delta Single Stream General QSAM Read 5.9 7.0 3.0 3.0 QSAM Write VSAM Read VSAM Write + 7% +11% + 7% +15% 6.3 2.8 2.6 9393 Turbo Models announced 04/97 same sizes for cache/NVS/GBs on disk ESCON only 16 Streams QSAM Read QSAM Write VSAM Read VSAM Write 33 +38% (Function announced 98-11-03) 19 14 +53% +43% +57% 29 20 8.8 13.8 Turbo shared memory with faster access time ... Access Method: VSAM OSAM Block Size Blocks transferred per I/O 4K 12 More internal concurrency and CU internal paths Measured Configurations: - ESCON Channels - Effective DASD Storage 9393-002 9393-T42 8 290G 8 420G T42 with up to 4 concurrent data transfers T82 with up to 8 concurrent data transfers > faster disk service times at low loads RVA-2 Max. Random Access Throughput (IO/sec) ,, > higher maximum throughput RVA-2 Turbo can also provide substantially improved throughput for random access workloads: Performance RVA-2 9393-002 VA-2 Turbo 9393-T42 PAWs Workload Delta Up to 50% higher throughput (T42 vs 002) ,, Read Hit Read Miss 1837 2738 719 +49% Smaller RVA subsystems (210GB or less) will show smaller improvements Performance Assessment Workloads: - 32 active volumes - 4K block size - 100% Read Hit - 12K block size - 100% Read Hiss Up to 20% higher throughput (T82 vs T42) ,, Measured Configurations: - ESCON Channels - Effective Cache - Effective NVS - Effective DASD Storage 9393-T42 8 2G 16M 420G 9393-002 8 2G Caused by more concurrent channel data transfers, appplies to loads with high blocksize or high hit ratios. 16M 290G WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM Н.9 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 H.10 Copyright IBM RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance ... RVA-2 Turbo vs RVA-2 Performance ... Maximum Random Access Throughput (cont'd) ,, Minimum Random Access Service Time (msec) The following tests include all four database benchmarks from the ... The following table indicates the minimum observed service times based on measuring a range of load levels: Performance Assessment Workloads (PAWs) RVA-2 9393-002 RVA-2 Turbo 9393-T42 Percent Improvement PAWs Workload Cache Uniform Cache Friendly Cache Standard Cache Hostile 5.9 msec 3.1 5.0 msec 2.6 4.8 9.4 -15% -16% **Cache Locality** They cover a range of cache locality, from cache friendly (typical read hit ratio 90 percent) to cache hostile (typical read hit ratio 40 percent). The hit ratio for a benchmark run also depends upon cache size. 5.8 11.2 -17% -16% Performance Assessment Workloads: - 4K Block Size - 48 Active Volumes Measured Configurations: - ESCON Channels - Effective Cache - Effective NVS - Effective DASD Storage 9393-002 9393-T42 Volume Skew 8 2G 16M 8 2G 16M 420G One of the 4 workloads (the Cache Uniform workload) loads all of the active volumes equally; the other 3 are designed with realistically high levels of skew across the active volumes. 290G Service Time = Connect + Disconnect + Pend RVA-2 9393-002 RVA-2 Turbo 9393-T42 PAWs Workload Delta Cache Uniform Cache Friendly Cache Standard Cache Hostile 1184 IO/sec 1450 997 1843 IO/sec 1656 1462 +55% +14%\* +47% More Information ,, 619 864 +40% Performance Assessment Workloads: - 4K Block Size - 48 Active Volumes For more RVA performance information refer to the presentation 'RAMAC Virtual Array 2 -Enhancements Overview-' via the IBM INTRAnet Large Systems Storage home page http://w3.ssd.ibm.com/ramac The I/O activity for the Cache Friendly workload did not saturate the 9393-T42 subsystem. The 14% higher throughput was obtained with a significantly lower response time RVA 2 Turbo 4-Path and Turbo 8-Path Performance by Bruce McNutt, IBM SSD, 04/97. Available to your IBM representative Measured Configurations: - ESCON Channels - Effective Cache - Effective NVS - Effective DASD Storage 9393-002 8 2G 9393-T42 8 2G IBM Disk Storage Systems Performance Update, 09/97 RVA-2 Turbo 8-path, by Chris Saul, PERFUPD on MKTTOOLS. Available to your IBM representative 16M 16M 2906 4206

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

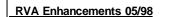
WK/HJU 2001-07-15

H.11

Copyright IBM

H.12

### **RVA Enhancements 05/98**



- **Ù** Announcement Contents
  - , Maximum (effective) cache size of 4 GB Of specific benefit for heavy data base workloads
  - ,, Improved u-code LIC 04.04.xx Shorter pathlength of key functions, most apparent for loads with high READ hit ratios
- **Ù** Performance

### Read Hit Performance (100% READ hits)

Performance Metric	LIC 4.3	LIC 4.4	Delta
I/O rate at 2.2 msec RT Max I/O rate	2334 3081/sec	2883 3785/sec	+24% +23%
Performance assessment 10 – 4K block size Measured configurations: – ESCON Channels – Storage Capacity	0% read hit v LIC 4.3 8 420G		

#### **Typical Database Performance**

READ hits and READ/WRITE ratio typical of online data base loads. Combined impact of shorter path lengths, as well as larger cache.

Performance Metric	LIC 4.3 3 GB	LIC 4.4 4 GB	Delta	
I/O rate at lO msec RT RT at 1600 IO/sec	1190/sec 13.4 msec	1390/sec 11.4 msec	+13% -15%	
Performance assessment cache standard workload: - 4K block size - Read hit ratio at high load: 78% - Read/write ratio: 3:1				

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

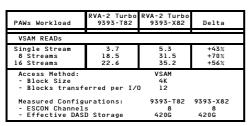
Copyright IBM

H.13

### **RVA Enhancements ...**

#### RVA Model X82 Performance

#### " Max. Sequential Throughput (MB/sec)



#### " Max. Random Access Throughput (IO/sec)

PAWs Workload	RVA-2 Turbo 9393-T82	RVA-2 Turbo 9393-X82	Delta
Read Hit Read Miss Cache Standard	3670 873 1687	4890 1159 2204	+33% +33% +31%
Performance Ass - 64 active vol - 4K block siz - 12K block siz	umes (96 for e – 100% Read e – 100% Read	Cache Std) d Hit d Miss	0707 200
Measured Config - ESCON Channel - Effective Cac	s he	9393-T82 8 4G	9393-X82 8 6G
<ul> <li>Effective NVS</li> <li>Effective DAS</li> </ul>		16M 420G	16M 420G

### **RVA Enhancements**

#### RVA Model T82 Enhancements (11/98)

- Announcement 98-11-03

- " PPRC (Feature 7001)
- " Up to 840 GB effective capacity Increments are 80, 130 and 210 GB

#### RVA Model T82 Enhancements: X82 (05/99)

- Announced 99-05-04
- " Up to 1024 logical devices (addresses)
- Former limit for T82 and other models was/is 256
- " Emulation of 3390-9 volumes

Allows easier migration for these 8.5 GB volumes. Each 3390-9 reduces #UCBs by 3.

 $\rm \acute{1}\,$  For performance reasons, avoid huge log. volumes

Higher wait time (IOSQ) in the operating system may occur, if device I/O rate and thus logical device contention is high. No performance disadvantage within RVA itself.

" Faster subsystem controller

Includes faster microprocessors

" Effective cache size of up to 6 GB

From 2G, in 512 MB increments. Of benefit for certain workloads (e.g. heavy data base).

H.14

H.16

### **RVA Enhancements ...**

#### RVA Model X82 Enhancements: X83 (07/99)

- Announced 99-07-27

- Here only deltas to Model X82 are listed

### " Use of 9G SSA HDDs

Vs 4.5G SCSI drives on all previous RVA models

" Up to 1.68 TB (effective) capacity

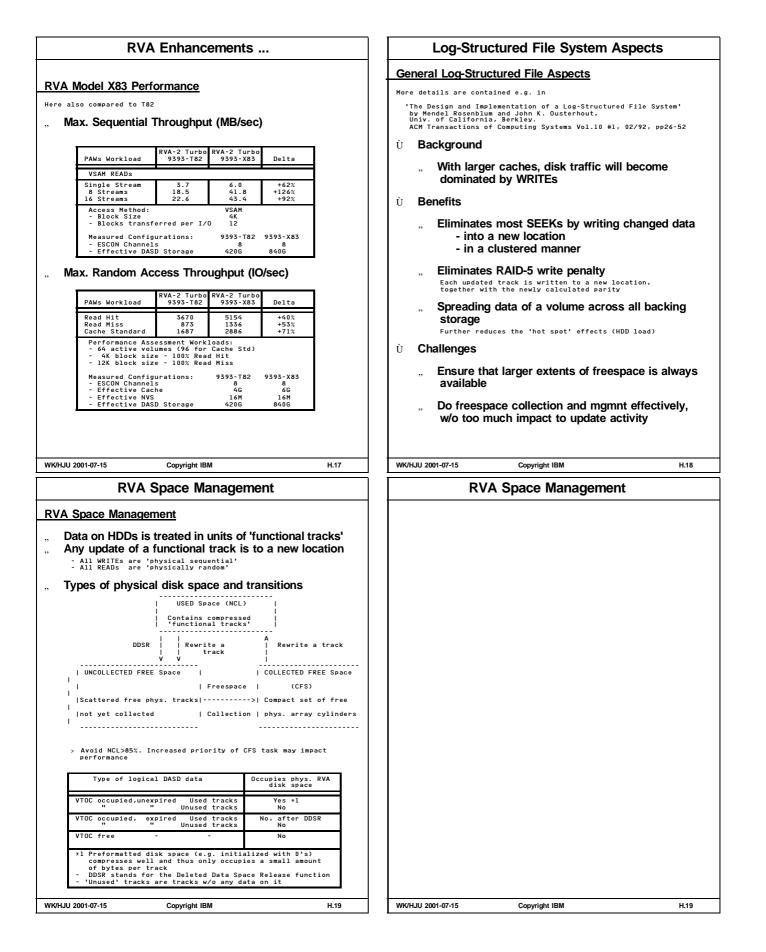
Vs 726 GB/840 GB before, starts now at 290 GB.

 $\rm i$  Improved performance due to SSA HDDs

Refer to tables on next foil

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM



## Perf. Benefits of LSA vs other RAMACs

Virtual capacity can significantly exceed installed

Besides less byte transferred on the 'lower interface'... Allocation of physical space for functional tracks is done in variable number of sectors

and gives faster transfer of tracks between cache

De-Staging of changed tracks to phys. disk can be

Hot spots on log. volumes are spread across all

1 As long as I/O rate per log. volume is not too

dataset placement on disks is uncritical Fast duplication of data possible w/o movement of

Copyright IBM

**IXFP DDSR for VM/VSE** 

Deleting a VSE file on a VSE minidisk or a DEDicated device does NOT free the occupied space in the RVA, but these tracks/extents -naturally- tend to be reused later.

Only in case an ENTIRE minidisk would be deleted, the space would no more be occupied:

(The SIBVMRVA utility enables a VM user to access RVA functions from a CMS REXX EXEC)

1 Results in 10% to 20% higher occupied space (Net Capacity Load, NCL) for VSE

compared to the case where DDSR would be done.

Compression of data also saves phys. space

Compression of data saves phys. cache size

Homeless tracks allow clustering on phys. disk

Perf. Benefits of LSA vs other RAMACs

physical capacity

done very effectively

HDDs of the I/O subsystem

IXFP DDSR for VM used for VM/VSE

IXFP/VM MINIDISK command

Limiting disadvantages

SIBVMRVA DDSRkill device-cuu

When DDSR for VSE is not available ... (i.e. IXEP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA is not installed)

VSE owned share of the RVA

The last 2 items also apply to VSE/ESA native

1 You may put 'workfiles' on extra minidisks

and 'VM-delete' them if capacity required

1 Reuse VSE workspace extents as soon as possible 1 Care for 10% to 20% higher usable capacity for the

Deleting a VSE file does not free space

Not only across 1 RAID-5 array

high ...

data: 'SnapShot'

and **HDDs** 

...

,,

...

•••

,,

,,

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

### RVA IXFP Program

#### IXFP program (OS/390, MVS, VM)

IXFP originally did not run under VSE, just under VM/ESA with IXFP/VM, or under 05/390. Refer to the 09/98 announcement of 'IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA'.

#### IXFP, beneficial for ••

**Dynamic configuration** 

Easier definition of volumes than from RVA operator panel

Media acceptance test ('CE work') Test of phys. devices (e.g. at extensions) w/o tying up host/channel/controller resources

#### IXFP, required for

DDSR (Deleted Data Space Release) function: Reclamation of tracks from deleted files i.e. for obsolete data on tracks outside a valid VTOC extent

1 All unallocated and unused space occupies no physical space, and is available for any of the 256/1024 'functional volumes' DDSR is NOT required for updated tracks

It is recommended to use Dynamic DDSR all the time, plus Interval DDSR occasionally (e.g. once per week). Interval DDSR alone shows often STORED > ALLOC values.

If DDSR would not be used or available, the capacity of an RVA is being lowered by such invalid files or DASD extents. This may, depending on installation, be from say 10% to 20%.

Data collection and reporting

Collect and log subsystem data similar to SMF/RMF

SnapShot copy program to separat

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM H.21

H.23

## **RVA IXFP/SnapShot**

#### SnapShot 'Instant Copy'

Requires IXFP 2.1

Duplicates data rapidly:

'Copy the pointers, not the data'.

Create multiple independent views of the data, seen by S/W. Create only a physical copy when original/copied track is updated

1 True 'point-in-time' copy

To SNAP a volume needs few see nds, e.g. 6 sec for a bigger volume

- **Dramatically reduces Backup times** ,, No data is moved during snap
- Eases creation of test data
- Operates at volume and data set levels

Be aware that copying a volume with e.g. VSAM files/catalogs needs specific attention if to be accessed by VSAM

- Supported by MVS/ESA (OS/390) ,,
- VM support announced 02/97

Refer to refer to - the next foils and/or - the presentation 'IBM SnapShot Overview', available via the IBM INTRAnet Large Systems Storage home page http://w3.ssd.ibm.com/ramac

Usage Note

Before using SnapShot for a volume, think of potential consequences if any active user still would try to use a volume (and that VSE VSAM and VM MDC buffers must be flushed to real disk before). The same aspect applies to DDSR, just as for REAL disks.

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

H.22

H.20

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

### IXFP/SnapShot for VM/VSE

#### IXFP/SnapShot for VM/VSE

IBM RAMAC SnapShot for VM/ESA V1 R1 (02/97).

- For more info, refer to 'IBM RAMAC SnapShot for VM/ESA, Installing and Using SnapShot' Version 1 Release 1, SC26–7217–00 (02/97)
- 'The RVA and IXFP for VM/ESA', Presentation by Jack Flynn, IBM SSD, VM/VSE Tech. Conf. Kansas City, 05/97
- Implementing SnapShot, SG24-2241-00, ITSO San Jose Redbook, 11/97, 185 pages
- Snapping can be done **,**, in a REXX program
   using the CMS command-line
- **Principal Snap Considerations** 
  - Data Duplication ('only')

for creation of test data
 for 'data mining' purposes
 might be usable, even if SnapShot ends with RC=4
 zzy snap', since I/Os occurred during snap)

Backup

- VSAM / non-VSAM

#### Data consistency and recovery are vital

Simple data consistency mostly(?) seems to be achievable by avoiding I/Os during the few snap seconds, but in order to continue after a restore, a defined log entry point would have to be available.

1 SnapShot for VM (for VSE guest exploitation) is 'not easy' and limited

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### IXFP/SnapShot for VM/VSE ...

IXFP/SnapShot for VM/VSE (cont'd)

- 'Instant Format' uses an already 'SNAPped' empty ,, minidisk (= pre-formatted)
- Target 'functional volumes' •••

must be to already defined devices
must be of same device type and model (geometry)

- If a fast snap is not possible (since target volume is on dissimilar device types or not within the same RVA), a 'data mover' is called, equivalent to DDR
- Impact of SNAPped disks on back-end storage ,, usage

If NCL becomes a concern, you must consider - the length of time SNAPped volumes are kept - the amount of meanwhile updated data in source and/or target volume

**VOLID** consideration ,,

SNAPping a volume under MVS allows to keep the VOLIDs, if  ${\rm COPYVOLID}({\rm YES})$  is used.

In any case 2 identical VOLIDs under the same VSE or operating system has known problems, if both are online.

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

H.26

H.24

### IXFP/SnapShot for VM/VSE ...

### IXFP/SnapShot for VM/VSE (cont'd)

#### SnapShot of any VM minidisk

'Snap' data from source to target minidisk linked/attached (independent of owner):

SNAP MINIDISK (SOUrce DEVice(cuu-s) TaRGet(DEVice(cuu-t))

#### SnapShot of any volume known to VM ,,

SNAP VOLUME (SOUrce DEVice(cuu-s) TaRGet(DEVice(cuu-t)) SNAP VOLUME (SOUrce VOLUME(volser) TaRGet(VOLUME(volser))

```
Device must be online to the VM attempting the snap operation (needs CP ATTACH and DEFINE MDISK):
Uses REAL device addresses, NOT intended for volumes attached to a
```

It is not possible to SNAP VOLUME a DEDicated device for a VM guest (e.g. VSE) which currently is up. The only way would be to IPL CMS under the same VSE guest ID, do a SNAP VOLUME and then re-IPL VSE.

Also, SnapShot VM does NOT allow to change the VOLID of the SNAPped volume (as does SnapShot for MVS).

Also any contiguous subset of a minidisk or volume may be SNAPped:

.... FROM (cyl) FOR (ncyls) additional SNAP parameters

H.25

### IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA

#### IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA

Combines the most important IXFP and SnapShot functions in 1 product.

Available as a priced optional feature of VSE Central Functions

Requirements: - VSE/ESA 2.3.0 (incl. PTF for APAR DY44820) or higher or VSE/ESA 2.1/2.2 (incl. PTF for APAR DY44841, 06/99) - RVA LIC level 03.00.00 or higher - SnapShot feature 6001 of the RVA.

### Performance Functions provided

#### DDSR (Deleted Data Space Release)

DASD space with data obsoleted via VTOC ('expired files') is freed, except files secured via DSF parameter. In VSE, this is done upon operator request, it is NOT 'Dynamic DDSR', which immediately frees storage.

Releases/Deletes all expired data on an RVA IXFP DDSR

IXFP DDSR,cuu Deletes a total volume (!) (only if device DOWN) ...(DSN=ds-name) or only a BAM data set

Do NOT specify the NOPROMPT option, unless you really are sure what you do.

### SnapShot 'Instant Copy' or 'Snap'

Fast 'data duplication/replication' for

- logical volumes (incl. VM PPMs) - cylinder ranges
- on a file basis (non-VSAM)
- to an existing (ADDed) target volum

Snaps a total volume to a target volume (must be DOWN, can get another VOL1 label) SNAP, source : target IXFP

Copyright IBM

ESS FlashCopy is described in the VSE/ESA 2.5 document

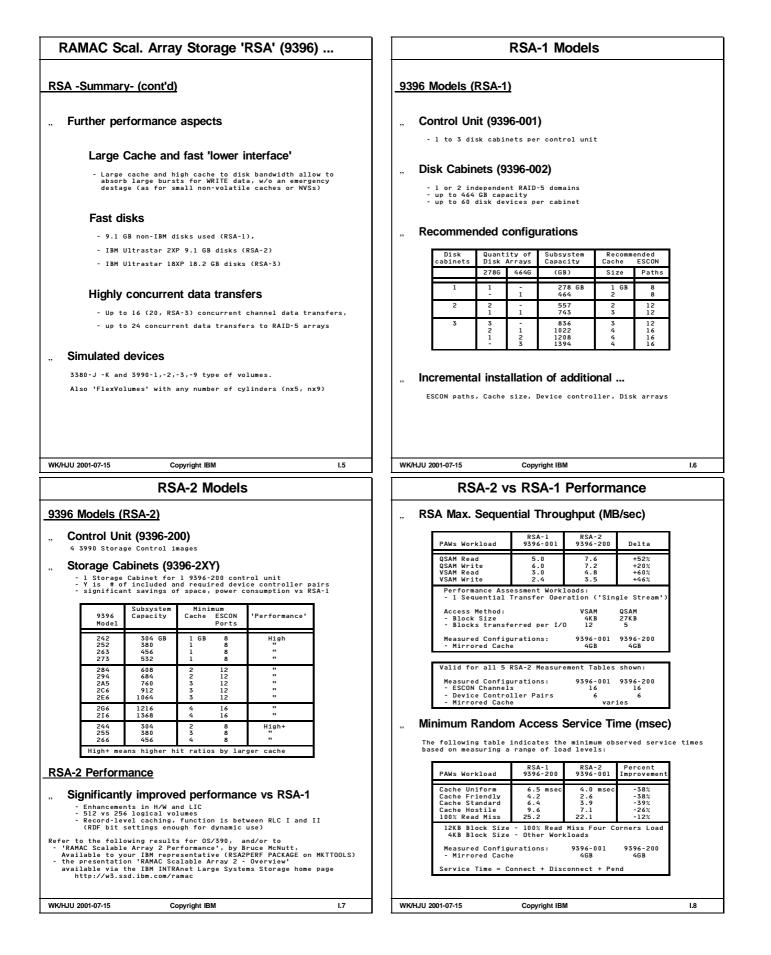
WK/HJU 2001-07-15

••

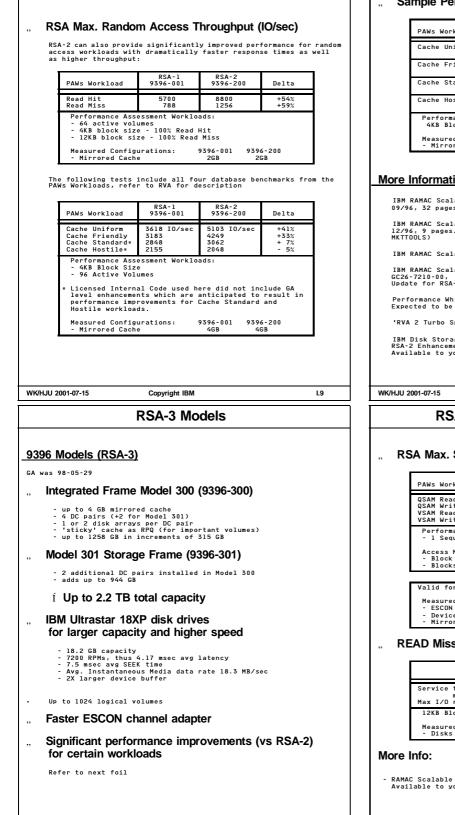
H.27

IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA	IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA
Performance Functions provided (cont'd)	<ul> <li>Memo to Current Licensees GI10-0487-00</li> <li>IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA LPS, GC33-6630</li> <li>The description in the Internet (via VSE/ESA home page)</li> </ul>
" Display of RVA space utilization(s)	<ul> <li>'RAMAC Virtual Array, PPRC and IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA', IBM Redbook, SG24-5360-00 (01/99)</li> </ul>
Defined/allocated/physic. occupied space, capacity, compact. ratio	
IXFP REPORT gives – Device Detail Report – Device Summary Report – Subsystem Summary Report	
Space per logical device:         All space here is in terms of 'functional space'.         DEFINED (via volume def)           ALLOCATED (in VTOC)	
Space per subsystem:	
DEFINED Sum of all volumes defined (functional MBs) DISK-ARRAY CAP. Total RVA Capacity (phys. MBs) FREE DISK-ARRAY CAP. Free RVA phys. space (phys. MBs) NCL = 1 - FREE-DISK-ARRAY-CAP. DISK-ARRAY-CAP.	
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM H.28	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM H.28
IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA	IXFP/SnapShot for VSE/ESA
Performance Benefits	DASD Space Considerations for SnapShot/VSE
IXFP functions provided via phase \$IJBIXFP (<50K in SVA-24)	How much DASD space do SnapShots require on top?
" DDSR gives lower Net Capacity Load (NCL),	" Background info
" SnapShot allows	- DASD space on RVA is always allocated in units of tracks
	<ul> <li>As soon as only 1 record is updated in an (original or snapped) track, a new track image is created (which is always written to a new position)</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>continuation of Online work, during backup to tape (from snapped data)</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Snapping data into a volume which already occupies DASD space for the same tracks does NOT increase requirements, even when original or snapped tracks are being updated</li> </ul>
- easy creation of test data	" Factors influencing addt'l DASD space
- reduction of required batch window	<ul> <li>Number of logical cylinders/tracks snapped</li> <li>Physical DASD space already occupied for the target volume</li> </ul>
•	
" Copying is in seconds rather than minutes	before snap – Time to keep original and snapped data – Resulting share of updated tracks by update activity to
	<ul> <li>Time to keep original and snapped data</li> <li>Resulting share of updated tracks by update activity to original and snapped tracks</li> </ul>
" Copying is in seconds rather than minutes No actual movement of data is involved, no host processor or channels tied up. Snap time also depends on utilization of RVA subsystem.	- Time to keep original and snapped data - Resulting share of updated tracks by update activity to
" Copying is in seconds rather than minutes No actual movement of data is involved, no host processor or channels tied up.	<ul> <li>Time to keep original and snapped data</li> <li>Resulting share of updated tracks by update activity to original and snapped tracks</li> <li>Extreme cases:         <ul> <li>Original data are not updated: '0%'</li> <li>No additional DASD space is required</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
" Copying is in seconds rather than minutes No actual movement of data is involved, no host processor or channels tied up. Snap time also depends on utilization of RVA subsystem. Several snaps may be active concurrently	<ul> <li>Time to keep original and snapped data</li> <li>Resulting share of updated tracks by update activity to original and snapped tracks</li> <li>Extreme cases:         <ul> <li>Original data are not updated: '0%'</li> <li>No additional DASD space is required (even when target volume has to be defined anew)</li> <li>All original data tracks are updated: '100%'</li> <li>All snapped tracks cause that addt'1 DASD space is required (for the updated originals)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>" Copying is in seconds rather than minutes</li> <li>No actual movement of data is involved, no host processor or channels tied up.</li> <li>Snap time also depends on utilization of RVA subsystem. Several snaps may be active concurrently</li> <li>Benefits of IXFP/SnapShot VSE for VM/VSE users</li> <li>VM/VSE users with IXFP/VM:</li> <li>" Freeing of DASD space (DDSR)</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Time to keep original and snapped data</li> <li>Resulting share of updated tracks by update activity to original and snapped tracks</li> <li>Extreme cases:         <ul> <li>Original data are not updated: '0%'</li> <li>No additional DASD space is required (even when target volume has to be defined anew)</li> <li>All original data tracks are updated: '100%'</li> <li>All snapped tracks cause that addt'1 DASD space is required</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Copying is in seconds rather than minutes         <ul> <li>No actual movement of data is involved, no host processor or channels tied up.</li> <li>Snap time also depends on utilization of RVA subsystem. Several snaps may be active concurrently</li> </ul> </li> <li>Benefits of IXFP/SnapShot VSE for VM/VSE users         <ul> <li>VM/VSE users with IXFP/VM:</li> <li>Freeing of DASD space (DDSR) occupied by obsolete data within a total VSE volume</li> <li>VM/VSE users with SnapShot/VM (includes IXFP/VM):</li> <li>Fast data duplication (SnapShot)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Time to keep original and snapped data</li> <li>Resulting share of updated tracks by update activity to original and snapped tracks</li> <li>Extreme cases:         <ul> <li>Original data are not updated: '0%'</li> <li>No additional DASD space is required (even when target volume has to be defined anew)</li> <li>All original data tracks are updated: '100%'</li> <li>All snapped tracks cause that addt'1 DASD space is required (for the updated originals)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Copying is in seconds rather than minutes</li> <li>No actual movement of data is involved, no host processor or channels tied up.</li> <li>Snap time also depends on utilization of RVA subsystem. Several snaps may be active concurrently</li> <li>Benefits of IXFP/SnapShot VSE for VM/VSE users</li> <li>VM/VSE users with IXFP/VM:</li> <li>Freeing of DASD space (DDSR) occupied by obsolete data within a total VSE volume</li> <li>VM/VSE users with SnapShot/VM (includes IXFP/VM):</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Time to keep original and snapped data</li> <li>Resulting share of updated tracks by update activity to original and snapped tracks</li> <li>Extreme cases:         <ul> <li>Original data are not updated: '0%'</li> <li>No additional DASD space is required (even when target volume has to be defined anew)</li> <li>All original data tracks are updated: '100%'</li> <li>All snapped tracks cause that addt'1 DASD space is required (for the updated originals)</li> <li>Recommendations</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

RAMAC Array Family, REA and RSA	RAMAC Electr. Array Storage 'REA' (9397)
PART I. RAMAC Array Family, REA and RSA	<ul> <li>RAMAC Electronic Array Storage -Summary-         <ul> <li>Announced 09/96 (REA-1), 04/97 (REA-2)</li> <li>Supported by VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4 and up</li> <li>(n) 'IXFP' required)</li> <li>Product evolved from STK 'Arctic Fox'</li> <li>1/2/3/4 GB of electronic 'disk' storage</li> </ul> </li> <li>Battery backed nonvolatile cache storage, no hard drives involved, similar in principal to Solid State Devices from other vendors</li> <li>Ultra high performance 'disk subsystem'</li> <li>ESCON attachment is important, 46 hour of power makes cooping to real disks unnecessary</li> <li>Appears as 3380s or 3390s at 3990-2</li> <li>Up to 256 logical volumes (REA-2: 512)</li> <li>Designed for small data sets with permanent high WRITE activity</li> <li>Especially when no chance for DIM exploitation is given. Examples are log files, VSE lock file (if native)</li> <li>Upgradable to RSA (RAMAC Scalable Array)</li> <li>REA-2 (9379-A02, 04/97) with significantly improved performance vs REA-1 (9397-A01)</li> </ul>
RAMAC Array DASD RAMAC Array Subsystem RAMAC Array Storage (RAMAC 3)	Enhancements to H/W and to LIC
RAMAC Virtual Array Storage 2 are discussed in previous parts	${\rm i}~$ Ultra high performance for critical data sets
RAMAC Electr. Array Storage 'REA' (9397)         RAMAC Electronic Array Storage ('REA')         " Attached via parallel or ESCON channels         8, 12, or 16 channels         " Mirrored cache         RAID-1 design allows non-disruptive cache card replacement and update ('hot pluggable components')         1, 2, 3 or 4 GB of mirrored cache (i.e. up to 8 GB of physical cache)         Non-mirrored cache available as RPQ         " All I/Os are 'cache hits'         " Up to 16 concurrent host transfers (READ/WRITE)         " Dual 100 MB/sec internal busses, each with 4 channel directors         " Max. throughput scalable via #channels <u>4 ESCON channels REA-2 up to 10000 ID/sec</u> <u>10 to 10 channels REA-2 up to 10000 ID/sec</u> More Information         For more information, refer to IBM RAMAC Electronic Array Storage, Introduction, 6C26-7205-00 the presentation 'RAMAC Electronic Array 2 - Overview' available via the IBM INTRANC Large Systems Storage home page	RAMAC Scal. Array Storage 'RSA' (9396)         RAMAC Scalable Array Storage 'RSA' -Summary-         Announced 09/96 (RSA-1), 04/97 (RSA-2), 02/98 (RSA-3)         Product evolved from STK 'Kodiak'         Supported by VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4 and up (no 'IXFP' required), 3380s must be ADDed as ECKD         Up to 1.4 TB (RAID-5) in a single frame up to 2.2 TB in total (RSA-3)         Mathematical Capacity disk arrays Bl/array / array pairs RSA-1 278 13946 *1 6 30 46.5 6 5d + 1p 26 854 - 2 104 1386 *1 6 4 18 76 6 d + 1p 26 9d + 1p 26 9d + 1p 24 *2         - 5d + 1p means 5 data +1 for rotating parity *1 single frame for disks *2 Model 301 attached for disks         Colspan="2">Calching front end' *2         up to 16 Channel Adapters *9 to 512 logical ESCON paths (32 per ESCON port) *1 to 4 68 (mirrored) cache *3 + Model 301 attached for disks         Fach device controller (DC) pair *2         provides 4 SCSI-II F/W 20 MB/sec paths (Each 4 concurrent transfers, in total 24)         . allows attachment of up to 5 arrays
available via the IBM INTRAnet Large Systems Storage home page http://w3.ssd.ibm.com/ramac REA-2 Announcement Letter	- provides 2x2M buffer memory (RAID processing)
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM I.3	WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         I.4



### RSA-2 vs RSA-1 Performance ...



WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

I.11

### RSA-2 vs RSA-1 Performance ...

#### Sample Performance (IO/sec with msec/IO)

	RSA-1	RSA-2				
PAWs Workload	9396-001	9396-200	Delta			
Cache Uniform	1028 at 7.1 ms	3785 at 6.3 ms	+268%			
Cache Friendly	850 at 4.5 ms	3386 at 4.5 ms	+298%			
Cache Standard	425 at 6.4 ms	1702 at 5.6 ms	+300%			
Cache Hostile	1494 at 21.7 ms	2048 at 19.9 ms	+37%			
Performance Assessment Workloads: 4KB Block Size						
Measured Configu - Mirrored Cache		9396-001 4GB	9396-200 4GB			

#### More Information

IBM RAMAC Scalable Array Storage Overview (Presentation Guide), 09/96, 32 pages. Available to your IBM representative (MKTTOOLS)

IBM RAMAC Scalable Array Storage System Architecture, 12/96, 9 pages. Available to your IBM representative (RSAARCH on MKTTOOLS)

IBM RAMAC Scalable Array Storage, Introduction, GC26-7212-00

IBM RAMAC Scalable Array Storage, Configuration and Performance, GC26-7210-00, Update for RSA-2 available 2097

Performance White Paper (RSA-2 vs RSA-1) Expected to be available on or before RSA-2 GA

'RVA 2 Turbo Spec Sheet', G2256675, as G2256675 on MKTTOOLS

IBM Disk Storage Systems Performance Update, 09/97 RSA-2 Enhancements, by Chris Saul, PERFUPD on MKTTOOLS. Available to your IBM representative

### Copyright IBM

### **RSA-3 vs RSA-2 Performance**

#### RSA Max. Sequential Throughput (MB/sec)

PAWs Workload	RSA-2 9396-200	RSA-3 9396-30x	Delta
QSAM Read	7.6	9.8	+29%
QSAM Write	7.2	8.7	+21%
VSAM Read	4.8	6.7	+40%
VSAM Write	3.5	5.0	+43%
Performance Ass – 1 Sequential			gle Stream')
Access Method:	erred per I/	VSAM	QSAM
– Block Size		4KB	27KB
– Blocks transfe		0 12	5

Valid for the RSA-3 Measurement Tables shown: Measured Configurations: - ESCON Channels 9396-30x 9396-200 ĩ, Device Controller Pairs Mirrored Cache 6 4 G B 4 GB

#### **READ Miss Performance**

	RSA-2 9396-216	RSA-3 9396-30x	Delta
Service time at min load	22.1 msec	18.7 msec	-15%
Max I/O rate	1256/sec	1429/sec	+14%
12KB Block Size	- 100% Read	Miss Four Co	orners Load
Measured Configu - Disks	urations:	9396-200 180 (9G)	9396-30x 80 (18G)

RAMAC Scalable Array 3 Overview (Presentation Guide), 02/98. Available to your IBM representative (RSA3PG98 on MKTTOOLS)

Copyright IBM

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

I.12

I.10

### **RAMAC Family Performance Comparison**

### **RAMAC Family White Paper Conclusions**

'An Overview and Comparison of RVA-2, RAMAC 3 and RSA Performance' as RAMFAM package on MKTTOOLS disk, 96-11-04, 19 pages, available to your IBM representative

Ù On-line (random) performance

RAMAC 3 vs RVA-2 vs RSA-1

- All 3 products can provide short response times, when configured for performance
- All 3 products can provide an inexpensive, ••• high-performance replacement for 3390/3380 devices
- Among the 3 products, RSA provides by far the highest throughput capability Lower maximum throughput does not mean that IORTs are higher for lower I/O rates (say < 1000 IO/sec)  $\,$
- Ù Batch (sequential) performance

Each of the 3 products offers important sequential advantages

- RSA has highest aggregate sequential data rates
- RVA-2 has highest single-stream WRITE
- RAMAC 3 has highest single-stream READ

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### Value of RAMAC Family I/O Subsystems

Value of RAMAC Family I/O Subsystems

- Ù Performance
- RAID 5/6 Data Protection/Availability Ù Discussed in part G
- Reconfiguration etc. during system up Ù Via RAID and/or duplication of H/W component
- Automatic Load Balancing across phys. HDDs Ù Applies to log. volumes in same RAID array/drawer, for RVA even across the total  $\rm I/O$  subsystem. Reduces/avoids disadvantages of hot spots, saves manual file placement for balancing (if possible at all)
- Usage of Logical Volumes of any Type and Size Ù 3380 and 3390 track/cylinder geometry, plus single/double/triple capacity volumes,
  - RVA even with any number of cylinders, for optimal performance of small/specific files for potentially improved msec/IO times (less IOSQ)
- Benefits for RVA only:
- Savings of Physical GBs for Space not Occupied Ù
- All Freespace is Common to All Logical Volumes Ù
- Easy and Fast Data Duplication and Backup Ù
  - Freedom to determine instant of backup when to copy backup data to tape cartridges to copy multiple volumes on a single cartridge (provided the utility allows that)
- WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

I.15

L13

## **RAMAC Family Performance Comparison ...**

### Volume Mapping Comparisons

- Ù Spreading of a Logical Volume Any S/W only sees 'logical' volumes, be it
  - traditional 'physical' volumes, e.g. 'real' 3380/3390s:

-> Data of 1 volume on 1 real DASD (HDD/HDA). Higher probability that a single real DASD is permanently overloaded (skew/hot spots)

- RAMAC I/O subsystems with 'simulated' volumes and RAID5/6: -> Data of 1 volume are spread/striped across multiple HDDs. Low probability that 1 HDD is overloaded

I/O Subsystem	# of HDDs (pl for l logi to spre	RAID			
RAMAC 1/2/3	4 HDDs	4 HDDs (2.2/4.5/9 GB)			
RVA-2	8 or 15 HDDs	(4.5 GB)	RAID-6		
RSA-1/-2/-3	6/9/9 HDDs	(9/18/18 GB)	RAID-5		
Int. Disk	1(2 for READ)	HDDs (9 GB)	RAID-1		
both for REAL	D and WRITE, se	(RPS miss avoida q. pre-staging) separate foils	nce,		

#### More Info on RAMAC Array Family

'An Overview and Comparison of RVA-2, RAMAC 3 and RSA Performance' As RAMFAM package on MKTTODLS disk, 96-11-04, 19 pages, available to your IBM representative

IBM RAMAC Family Performance Positioning, by John Bacho. As RFAMPERF on MKTTOOLS

Storage Systems Alternatives for VSE and VM, by Bill Worthington. VM/VSE Tech Conf, Kansas City, 05/97, Session 10D (includes DASD selection criteria)

WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM

#### I.14

### **Multiprise Internal Disk**

PART J.

**Multiprise Internal Disk** 

#### Multiprise 2000 ID

- Summary (Original & Enhanced ID) ,,
- Performance Results (Original & Enhanced)

Copyright IBM

- **ID Storage Hints** ,,
- Performance Hints ,,
- **IOCP** Definitions ,,
- **Further References**

### Multiprise 3000 ID

- Summary Enhancements vs MP 2000 ID
- ••• Performance ...

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

J.1

### Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk

#### Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk -Summary-

A feature of the S/390 Multiprise 2000 processors, first announced 09/96, first available 01/97

" S/390 I/O data are cached in real memory

32 MB up to 1 GB cache can be flexibly configured in 32 MB increments, 2 GB announced 05/98

- No WRITE caching first, but Internal Disk Fast Write since 09/97 From 18 up to 288 GB (576 GB 05/98) of user data,
- using DASD mirroring (RAID-1) Increments are (mostly) in 4 HDDs (includes the mirrors).
- " Appears as 3380-K (+J,E) or 3390-1/2/3/9 volumes, ESCON attached to 3990-2 which on top accepts cache guery commands
  - Í Devices must be ADDed in VSE as ECKD If not ADDed as ECKD, unrecoverable I/O errors may result (no VPD settings possible as for RAMAC Array Subsystem). Also, an additional WRITE performance degradation would occur
  - Í VSE/ESA 1.2 is required at least but release no more in service
- " Uses fast IBM Ultrastar HDDs, attached via internal SCSI-2 FW device adapters
  - 9G 2XP HDDs originally, 9G 9LP and 18G 18XP since 05/98
     Up to 8 logical S/390 volumes per HDD
     512 KB HDD cache (buffer) size
  - 1 No separate external control unit req'd

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

J.2

### Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk ...

- Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk (cont'd)
- " Sequential Pre-staging
  - Up to 3 tracks are pre-staged, if in READ channel programs the sequential indication is set in the DX CCW
- " Unit of staging

Staging	Used
Rest-of-track	in general (>90%)
Total track	if track format not 'predictable'
Record(s) only	if Record Caching indicated in channel program
of the sectors o	ack format allows direct calculation on the HDD containing a desired record. acks are predictable with fixed size of full tracks

" READs are done from the least busy HDD

Any data resides on 2 HDDs (RAID-1).

This helps in case of higher READ-IO/sec rate if e.g. 2 busy logical volumes reside on the same HDD

- " 256 logical devices in total 8 log. vols/HDD x 16 HDD/drawer x 2 drawers
- " S/W upgrades for Internal Disk
  - ICKDSF 16

APAR PN86705 (PTF UN97485, UN97483 (SA)) EREP 3.5 APAR DY44343 (PTF UD50246) IOCP 1.5

APAR DY44132 (PTF UD50041/UD50048 for VSE/ESA V1/V2)

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk ...

### Internal Disk -Summary- (cont'd)

- " The total DASD capacity determines the #HDDs and also their position in a drawer or cage
- , Hot pluggable devices, with automatic resync after device replacement
- Int. Disk I/O processing on extra processor (SAP)

S/390 volume emulation is done on 'System Assist Processor'

1 No impact on processor speed

Impact by moving of data within real memory is very small. Additional SAPs can be defined, using a spare S/390 u-processor. Refer to the WSC flash 9646

- , Internal capacity of 1 SAP is a high IO/sec figure SAP utilization is shown on the System Activity Display (SAD) of the Multiprise 2000 H/W console
- , /370-mode guests (under VW/ESA or in /370 LPAR) originally not supported (Restriction removed by 07/97 enhancements)
- " Originally targetted for non-shared data Sharing of data between LPARs introduced 07/97
- " Bigger degradation for small Format WRITEs

Refer to separate bullet

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM

J.3

### Internal Disk Enhancements (06/97)

Internal Disk Enhancements (06/97) Announced 97-06-09, available 97-08-31 with EC E26479 plus MCL 06 " Internal Disk Fast Write (IDFW) Done in the 512K device buffer of each HDD - The Internal Battery Feature (IBF) must be installed and fully operational (no IDFW must be enabled on the ID Control Unit Customization).

 IDFW must be enabled on the ID Control Unit Customization Panel for the CE, in case u-code level '92W'.
 (The CE can disable IDFW entirely on the system level, IDFW cannot be controlled by S/W)

Í To be activated by CE, if u-code level <'98G' Driver 98G is EC-level E26572 with MCL 06, shown via the Service Element (PC).

#### IDFW is a limited DFW implementation:

- 'Single thread' per HDD for random I/Os
- Only up to 2 concurrent back-to-back sequential I/Os (each up to 1 logical track) to the same HDD can obtain fast DFW hits (early device end)
- -> 512K per HDD is ample -> IDFW not so effective e.g. for SQL/DS(DB2) Checkpointing e.g. for frequent small format WRITEs
- " Sharing of logical volumes across LPARs LPARs must be within same processor
- " Simulation of 3380 models J, E, besides K

S/370-mode allowed for VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4

- as a guest under VM/ESA - in a S/370 LPAR

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

J.4

Copyright IBM

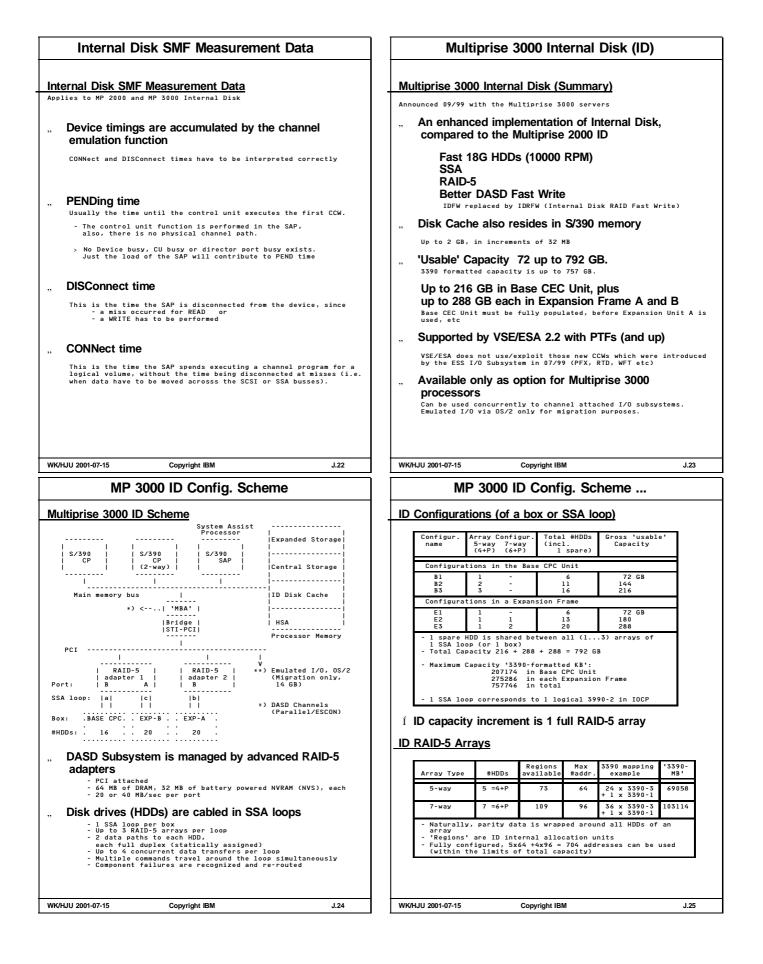
J.5

Multiprise 2000 ID Drawers (-100 models)	
- 1 Drawer (6/6/4 HDDs per SCSI bus, 3 SCSI buses) - 1 Drawer (6/6/4 HDDs per SCSI bus, 3 SCSI buses) 	MP 2000 Internal Disk Enhancements (05/98)         Requires LIC Level A2 u-code.         Driver DA2I with EC-level E26599 and needs MCL fix level 027.         Ù       Increased maximum cache size:         Up to about 2G (1920M) in real memory         Ù       Use of new HDDs         % Ultrastar 9LP and 18G Ultrastar 18XP, with slightly better Avg Read time and MB/sec values.          Capacity # 96 HDDs # 186 HDDs # HDDs tot 18 GB 4 - 4 54 GB 12 - 12 72 GB 8 4 - 12 109 GB 4 - 12 109 GB 4 - 12 109 GB 4 - 12 109 GB 4 - 12 100 GB - 12 100 GB 4 - 12 100
Image:	126 GB     4     12     16       144 GB     -     16     16       180 GB     -     20     20       216 GB     -     24     24        -     64     64       - Table applies to NEWBULD orders     -     -       - Increments are 186 (<144G) and 366 (>144G)     -     For orders >288G, 2 cages will be used       Ù     Doubled total disk capacity:
" Mirroring is across SCSI buses	up to 576 GB user data
WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         J.6           Original Internal Disk Performance	WKHJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         J.           Enhanced Internal Disk Performance           Enhanced MP 2000 Internal Disk Perf. Results
Original MP 2000 Internal Disk Performance	ù RANDOM I/O-Intensive Jobs
Original MP 2000 Internal Disk Performance         These results apply to the original ID implementation         ,, For VSE, Internal Disk performance was better than a READ-cached 9345 configuration         6 msec/I0 vs 8 msec/I0 (PACEX, R/W =1.52 = write intensive)         Int. Disk Performance on 2003-116         Case       #HDDs         PACEX8       10         6.0       675         53%         - Load was about balanced across the HDDs	Ù       RANDOM I/O-Intensive Jobs         Deltas achieved by IDFW         #HDDs         #HDDs       msec/IO change       I/O rates IO/secs       Thruput increase         PACEX1       1       4.67->3.54       (-28%)       218-> 289       +32%         PACEX4       5       5.68->4.18       (-26%)       689-> 880       +27%         PACEX8       10       5.96->4.63       (-26%)       1135->1346       +18%         PACEXA means n times 7 jobs in n partitions         - R/W ratio of PACEX is 1.52       (i.e. 39.7% Write content)         - VSE/ESA 2.2.1 on 2003-116, 256 MB ID cache (08/97)
These results apply to the original ID implementation , For VSE, Internal Disk performance was better than a READ-cached 9345 configuration 6 msec/I0 vs 8 msec/I0 (PACEX, R/W =1.52 = write intensive)	Deltas achieved by IDFW           #HDDs         msec/I0 change         I/0 rates         Increase           PACEX1         1         4.67->3.34         (-28%)         218-> 289         +32%           PACEX4         5         5.68->4.18         (-26%)         689-> 880         +27%           PACEX8         10         5.96->4.63         (-26%)         689-> 880         +27%           PACEX8         10         5.96->4.63         (-26%)         1135->1346         +18%           - PACEXn means n times 7 jobs in n partitions         -         R/W ratio of PACEX is 1.52         (i.e. 39.7% Write content)           - VSE/ESA         2.2.1 on 2003-116, 256 MB ID cache (08/97)         1           Í         Significant I/O time benefits with IDFW         Deltas achieved by IDFW           Deltas achieved by IDFW         Type of         Thruput
These results apply to the original ID implementation "For VSE, Internal Disk performance was better than a READ-cached 9345 configuration 6 msec/I0 vs 8 msec/I0 (PACEX, R/W =1.52 = write intensive) Int. Disk Performance on 2003-116 Case #HDDs msec/I0 I0/sec SAP util. PACEX4 5 6.0 675 33% PACEX8 10 6.0 1077 53% - Load was about balanced across the HDDs - Original ID, without IDFW "Originally not suited at all for high WRITE content No RAID-5 WRITE penalty, but RAID-1 needs WRITE also to the mirror-HDD, which is started concurrently	Deltas achieved by IDFW           #HDDs         msec/I0 change         I/0 rates         Thruput           #HDDs         msec/I0 change         I/0 rates         Increase           PACEX1         1         4.67-33.34 (-28%)         218-> 289         +32%           PACEX4         5         5.68->4.18 (-26%)         689-> 880         +27%           PACEX8         10         5.96->4.63 (-22%)         1135->1346         +18%           - VACEX8         10         5.96->4.63 (-22%)         1135->1346         +18%           - VEXEX8         2.2.1 on 2003-116, 256 MB ID cache (08/97)          SEQUENTIAL Write Jobs           Ú         SEQUENTIAL Write Jobs         Deltas achieved by IDFW

about 0.1% and more         Friet of each size is and more details         Friet of each size is and more details         Friet of each size is and more details         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         Do not 'steal' too much real storage from VSE/ESA         Marking DF 1 set of "feeting and area size of 0" internal thorage."         When a cache for 1 GB of data, or more         Do not 'steal' too much real storage/MIPS'         Water and the set and the VYECH acquired to the "Hild"         Add up estimates for minimum sizes         Examples for Cache Size Calculations         Examples for Cache Size Calculations <t< th=""><th>MP 2000 Internal Disk Storage Hints</th><th>MP 2000 Internal Disk Storage Hints</th></t<>	MP 2000 Internal Disk Storage Hints	MP 2000 Internal Disk Storage Hints
<ul> <li>Recommended 'Cache to Backstore Ratio': about 0.1% and more         (rett of cache tast to net over data)         (rett of cache tast to n</li></ul>	ache and Real Storage Hints	Example holds for VM/VSE or VSE native without LPARs.
about 0.1% and more         Iratic of cacks to be if user data?         Iratic of cacks to be if user data?         Bine 1/0 weeks as been beek to be to be week active if a minimum sizes         i Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         Do not 'stead' to much real storage from VSE/ESA         detriction 2 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         Do not 'stead' to much real storage from VSE/ESA         detriction 2 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         Do not 'stead' to much real storage from VSE/ESA         detriction 2 MB call storage/MIPS'         Understein 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         Add use status if the vert of the vertical storage/MIPS'         Interve 2 MB call storage/MIPS'         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient and the vert of the vertical storage/MIPS'         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient and the vert of the vertical storage/MIPS'         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient and the vert of the vertical storage for maximum call storage may be sufficient only:         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient only:         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient only:         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient only:         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient only:         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient only:         Interve 2 MB call storage may be sufficient only:	Recommended 'Cache to Backstore Ratio':	A     A           Expanded   Expanded (optional, VM only)
Interface to be near to and user data)         State 1/d verticable segments to match the 1.0 for the 1.0 more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         Do not 'steal' too much real storage from VSE/ESA         Addition of the set of the for to GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more         I Use 2 MB total storage may be sufficient only:         I Use 1 MB cotal storage may be sufficient only: <tdi 1="" be="" cotal="" may="" mb="" o<="" storage="" sufficient="" th="" use=""><th>about 0.1% and more</th><th>    'E' MB         V</th></tdi>	about 0.1% and more	'E' MB         V
WWH/JU 2001-07-15       Copyright IBM       J.10         MP 2000 Internal Disk Storage Hints       Internal Disk Storage and VM MDC         Cache and Real Storage Hints (cont'd)       Internal Disk Storage and VM MDC          Internal Disk Stora	<pre>Some I/O workloads may benefit up to about a 0.5% ratio Note: This basic rule assumes that the GB on DASD are active 'to an average degree' of about 1 IO/sec per installed DASD GB. I Use 1 MB cache for 1 GB of data, or more Donot 'steal' too much real storage from VSE/ESA Applying DIM is most effective and saves also CPU-time. But no I/O benefit can compensate increased VSE paging if you 'ver-DIM' compared to the available real storage. You are on the safe side if VSE/ESA exploits DIM, with Dufo 6 MB real storage/MIPS' Whatever 'MIPS' is and how it is often misused, refer to 'MIPS' in Turbo Dispatcher document) Add at least 8 MB base for VSE Add at least 8 MB base for VSE ADD is used for the VSE guest or CMS applications on top. Even when using VM MDC, use the processor storage as central and</pre>	Processor   ID-cache   HSA   HSA
MP 2000 Internal Disk Storage Hints         Cache and Real Storage Hints (cont'd)         Examples for Cache Size Calculations         Multiprise processor storage sizes         Processor       Man         2003-102 to -207       256 dial         2003-227 to -207       256 dial       266         2003-227 to -207       268 dial       266         Size of Hardware System Areal (dHSA)       Man       266         The HSA contains Licenced Internal Disk cache).       100 to 200 to -207       200 to -207         2014 caching must be done by IDFW       WITE caching must be done by IDFW         WITE caching must be done by IDFW       WITE caching must be done by IDFW         WITE caching must be done on the separate statistic to 100 provided.       WITE caching can be controlled on minidish         Sample Calculations       128 MB total storage may be sufficient only:       WITE caching would honor 'Record Caching'         With'', reasonaby' 'Differ', 1.0, By Has leaving 150       With By caching, appropriate for about 556       With Storage may be sufficient only:       U       M MDC caching		
Cache and Real Storage Hints (cont'd)          Examples for Cache Size Calculations         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a single VM and no data are shared with outside that VM:         In case VSE runs under a sing	K/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM J.10	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM J.11
multiprise processor storage sizes         multiprise processor storage sizes this has to be considered.         Refer to 'Multiprise System Overview', 6A22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the sta statistic tool provided.         multiprise system overview', 6A22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the sta statistic tool provided.         multiprise system overview', 6A22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the sta statistic tool provided.         multiprise system overview', 6A22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the sta statistic tool provided.         multiprise system overview', 6A22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the sta statistic tool provided.         multiprise system overview', 6A22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the sta statistic tool provided.         multiprise system overview', 6A22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the sta statistic tool provided.         multiprise system overview', 6A22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or stability of multiprise system overview', 6	MP 2000 Internal Disk Storage Hints	Internal Disk Storage and VM MDC
<ul> <li>depending on configuration (not counting Internal Disk cache).</li> <li>For smaller processor storage sizes this has to be considered.</li> <li>Refer to 'Multiprise System Overview', GA22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the HSA estimation tool provided.</li> <li>Sample Calculations</li> <li>128 MB total storage may be sufficient only:         <ul> <li>e.g. for 54 GB of Int. Disk user storage (64 MB cache), 10 MB HSA, leaving 54 MB real for S/390, appropriate for about 52/64</li> <li>g 'MIPS', reasonably 'DIMed', i.e. about a 2003-104.</li> </ul> </li> <li>W MDC cache processing is done in VM CP, ID cache processing is done on the separate storage (64 MB cache), 10 MB HSA leaving 150 MB real for S/390, appropriate for about 52/64</li> <li>g 'MIPS', reasonably 'DIMed', i.e. about a 2003-104.</li> <li>U ID caching would honor 'Record Caching' Mostly of benefit for smaller caches, but only if access partices and the separate storage of the storage part of the separate storage (64 MB cache), 10 MB HSA leaving 150 MB real for S/390, appropriate for about 150/6 = 25 MIPS,</li> </ul>	Examples for Cache Size Calculations            Multiprise processor storage sizes             Processor             2003-102 to -107             2003-203 to -207             2003-227 to -227             2003-227 to -257             2003-227 to -257             2003-227 to -257             2003-227 to -257             2014             2015             2015             2015             2015             2015             2015             2015	Assign addt'l central storage to ID or to VM MDC? The answer depends on your specific situation. Please consider Ù Both provide excellent READ caching
MB real for S/390, appropriate for about 150/6 = 25 MIPS, partly sequential	For smaller processor storage sizes this has to be considered. Refer to 'Multiprise System Overview', GA22-7152-01, pp 3-12, and/or use the HSA estimation tool provided. Sample Calculations 128 MB total storage may be sufficient only: e.g. for 54 GB of Int. Disk user storage (64 MB cache), 10 MB HSA, leaving 54 MB real for S/390, appropriate for about 54/6 = 9 'MIPS', reasonably 'DIMed', i.e. about a 2003-104.	ID cache processing is done on the separate SAP Ù VM MDC caching can be controlled on minidisk level
reasonably 'DIMed', i.e. about a 2003-115 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM J.12 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM	MB real for S/390, appropriate for about 150/6 = 25 MIPS, reasonably 'DIMed', i.e. about a 2003-115	Mostly of benefit for smaller caches, but only if accesses not partly sequential

Internal Disk -More Insight-	Critical VSE Performance Areas for ID
	Critical VSE Performance Areas for MP 2000 ID
MP 2000 Internal Disk -More Insight-	The following VSE specific areas may need attention, when migrating fr a cached I/O subsystem with DFW to MP 2000 Internal Disk.
	1 Do not expect in general that WRITE performance is as good as with your 'old' DFW I/O subsystem
	Refer to the IDFW description in this document
What is specific for ID, vs other I/O subsystems?	ù SQL/DS (DB2 for VM/VSE) databases and DL/I
The fact that the READ-cache is in central storage (and thus closer to the \$/390 programs) means	By default, so far VSAM used Record Caching (RC) for the I/Os to such types of ESDS files.
<ul> <li>U In case of a READ hit, response is very fast</li> </ul>	Depending on the access pattern and ID cache size, better performance may be obtained by NOT using RC, since ID performance is very sensitive in that area. Consider also that RC I/Os are not included in the statistic
The responses for READ hits are as fast as VM MDC READ hits	counters provided by ID. Use VSE/ESA 2.4 or apply APAR DY44796 to VSE/ESA 2.3 in order to
(no '\$/390 channel' is involved, just moving of data within central storage)	NOT use RC by default for such VSAM files.
The fact that the WRITE-cache is in the buffer of the HDD (and 'outside' of a pure ID implementation) means	U SQL/DS (DB2 for VM/VSE) checkpointing
(aug .ontside, of a bulk in imblementation) means	SQL/DS under VSE requires massive WRITEs at checkpoints. This is a stress case for IDFW.
<b>Ù</b> Real WRITE hits only occur when the HDD buffer	Refer to the IDFW description in this document
is available to accept the data immediately	<ul> <li>Formatting of data file extents</li> <li>(e.g. SQL/DS coldlogs or BAM files)</li> </ul>
Refer to a previous foil for more details on the IDFW implementation	As with other I/O subsystems, formatting tracks may be inefficien if much less than 1 track is formatted per I/O (By architecture, after the last format-write in a channel program the whole rest-of-track has to be erased).
<ul> <li>RAID-1 is more vulnerable to hot spots (data are not striped across multiple HDDs)</li> </ul>	With ID, this may even hurt more, since 2 copies of the tracks (RAID-1) have to be written.
	For BAM/SAM files, use bigger physical records (BLOCKED) to defin the file, or for FB files, overwrite RECSIZE in DLBL
/K/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM J.14	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM J.15
MP 2000 Internal Disk Perf. Hints	MP 2000 Internal Disk Perf. Hints
O Channel/Device Hints	I/O Channel/Device Hints (cont'd)
Use enough/more S/390 logical volumes	" Volume placement (mapping)
<ul> <li>to reduce IOSQ time</li> <li>to potentially improve I/O response times</li> </ul>	To place a S/390 logical device on the next HDD, you have to re-start with a device number increased by 8 (vs the first device on that HDD)
Use as many S/390 volumes as you used to use w/o Internal Disk. Maybe use more if these disks were big with high I/O rates.	E.g. x00-x03 for 4 devices on 1st HDD, x08 for the 1st device on the 2nd HDD
	(This also applies if <8 logical volumes are defined per HDD)
A 3390-9 has the highest probability of causing excessive queuing in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller	
A 3390-9 has the highest probability of causing excessive queuing in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1). This reduces IOSQ waits in S/390 channel queue (less -logical- device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide.	" Volume placement within an HDD If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUs. The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first.
in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390–3, maybe 3390–1). This reduces IOSQ waits in S/390 channel queue (less –logical– device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal	" Volume placement within an HDD If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUs. The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first. Usually, I/O rates vary, so this may be less practical.
in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1). This reduces IOSQ waits in S/390 channel queue (less -logical- device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide.	<ul> <li>Volume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance         Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUS.         The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first.         Usually, I/O rates vary, so this may be less practical.     </li> <li>ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD</li> </ul>
in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1). This reduces IOSQ waits in S/390 channel queue (less -logical- device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide. Careful avoid excessive accumulation of S/390 I/O	<ul> <li>Wolume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance         Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUs.         The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer         cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first.         Usually, I/O rates vary, so this may be less practical.     </li> <li>         ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD         This applies for functional reasons to any disk type (3380/3390).     </li> </ul>
in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1). This reduces IOSQ waits in S/390 channel queue (less -logical- device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide. Careful avoid excessive accumulation of S/390 I/O to any single HDD	<ul> <li>Volume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance         Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUs.         The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first.         Usually. 1/0 rates vary, so this may be less practical.      </li> <li>         ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD         This applies for functional reasons to any disk type (3380/3390).         For performance reasons, applications may benefit from caching bit      </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1).</li> <li>This reduces IOSQ waits in \$/390 channel queue (less -logical-device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide.</li> <li>Careful avoid excessive accumulation of \$/390 l/O to any single HDD</li> <li>Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Wolume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance         Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUs.         The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first.         Usually, I/O rates vary, so this may be less practical.     </li> <li>         ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD         This applies for functional reasons to any disk type (3380/3390).         For performance reasons, applications may benefit from caching bi settings in ECKD channel programs.         Performance-wise this aspect is OK, if the device type displayed      </li> </ul>
in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1). This reduces IOSQ waits in S/390 channel queue (less -logical- device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide. Careful avoid excessive accumulation of S/390 I/O to any single HDD Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD to any set of 4/6/8 HDDs which share 1 SCSI bus	<ul> <li>Wolume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance             Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUS.             The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first.             Usually, I/O rates vary, so this may be less practical.         </li> <li>         ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD         This applies for functional reasons to any disk type (3380/3390).             For performance reasons, applications may benefit from caching bi settings in ECKD channel programs.         Performance-wise this aspect is OK, if the device type displayed by VOLUME cuu shows 6E.         Make sure ECKD channel programs are used         Using non-convertible CKD channel programs will lead to significa I/O performance degradations, especially for WRITES.     </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1).</li> <li>This reduces IDSQ waits in \$/390 channel queue (less -logical-device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide.</li> <li>Careful avoid excessive accumulation of \$/390 l/O to any single HDD</li> <li>Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD</li> <li>Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD</li> <li>This is a side consideration, for extreme cases only</li> <li>Place concurrently active data sets on different volumes that reside on different HDDs</li> <li>This can be done by proper selection of the device number (cuu), see next item.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Wolume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance         Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUS. The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first. Usually, I/O rates vary, so this may be less practical.     </li> <li><b>ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD</b>         This applies for functional reasons to any disk type (3380/3390). For performance reasons, applications may benefit from caching bi settings in ECKD channel programs.         Performance-wise this aspect is OK, if the device type displayed by VOLUME cuu shows 6E.         <b>Make sure ECKD channel programs are used</b>         Using non-convertible CKD channel programs will lead to signification.     </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1).</li> <li>This reduces IOSQ waits in \$/390 channel queue (less -logical-device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide.</li> <li>Careful avoid excessive accumulation of \$/390 l/O to any single HDD</li> <li>Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD</li> <li>Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD</li> <li>This is a side consideration, for extreme cases only</li> <li>Place concurrently active data sets on different volumes that reside on different HDDs</li> <li>This can be done by proper selection of the device number (cuu),</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Wolume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance         Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUs.         The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first.         Usually. 1/0 rates vary, so this may be less practical.     </li> <li> <b>ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD</b>         This applies for functional reasons to any disk type (3380/3390).         For performance reasons, applications may benefit from caching bis settings in ECKD channel programs.         Performance-wise this aspect is OK, if the device type displayed by VOLUME cuu shows 6E.         Wake sure ECKD channel programs are used         Using non-convertible CKD channel programs will lead to significat I/0 performance degradations, especially for WRITEs.         Refer to the ECKD vs CKD part of this document      </li> </ul>
<ul> <li>in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1).</li> <li>This reduces IDSQ waits in \$/390 channel queue (less -logical-device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide.</li> <li>Careful avoid excessive accumulation of \$/390 l/O to any single HDD</li> <li>Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD</li> <li>Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD</li> <li>This is a side consideration, for extreme cases only</li> <li>Í Place concurrently active data sets on different volumes that reside on different HDDS</li> <li>This can be done by proper selection of the device number (cuu), see next item.</li> <li>WRITE is more exposed than READ to that, since</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Wolume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance         Assign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUS. The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes me assigned first. Usually, I/O rates vary, so this may be less practical.     </li> <li><b>ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD</b>         This applies for functional reasons to any disk type (3380/3390). For performance reasons, applications may benefit from caching bi settings in ECKD channel programs.         Performance-wise this aspect is OK, if the device type displayed by VOLUME cuu shows 6E.         <b>Make sure ECKD channel programs are used</b>         Using non-convertible CKD channel programs will lead to significa I/O performance degradations, especially for WRITES.         Refer to the ECKD vs CKD part of this document         Description         Descript</li></ul>
<pre>in the channel queue of the operating system, thus prefer smaller (logical) volumes (e.g. 3390-3, maybe 3390-1).</pre> This reduces IOSQ waits in S/390 channel queue (less -logical- device contention) and offers more I/O concurrency to the Internal Disk I/O Subsystem. Refer to the User's Guide. Careful avoid excessive accumulation of S/390 I/O to any single HDD Up to 8 logical volumes per HDD to any set of 4/6/8 HDDs which share 1 SCSI bus This is a side consideration, for extreme cases only I Place concurrently active data sets on different volumes that reside on different HDDs This can be done by proper selection of the device number (cuu), see next item. WRITE is more exposed than READ to that, since - READs can be done from the original or the mirrored disk	<ul> <li>Nolume placement within an HDD         If you want or need to squeeze out the most of ID in terms of performance         Asign the most busy volumes within an HDD to the lowest CUUS. The reason behind is that data rates are higher at the outer cylinders of the HDDs, where volumes are assigned first.         Usually. I/O rates vary, so this may be less practical.     </li> <li>ADD all VSE DASDs as ECKD         This applies for functional reasons to any disk type (3380/3390).         For performance reasons, applications may benefit from caching bis settings in ECKD channel programs.         Performance-wise this aspect is OK, if the device type displayed by VOLUME cuu shows 6E.         Make sure ECKD channel programs are used         Using non-convertible CKD channel programs will lead to significat I/O performance degradations, especially for WRITES.         Refer to the ECKD vs CKD part of this document     </li> <li>VMVVSE Hint         <b>Apply the PTFs for APARs VM60844/VM61046</b>         PTFs are required to retrieve VM cache statistics for the International programs of the statistics for the Internating programs of the pro</li></ul>

Internal Disk and IOCP	Internal Disk - IOCP Example
Internal Disk Definition in IOCP Description holds for MP 2000 ID. For MP 3000 ID, a new channel type 'DSD' must be used.	<pre>* IOCP for Multiprise 2000-100s Int. Disk (Max. Configuration) * * CU definitions for max. configuration: * * - 2 + 2 Drawers (2 original + 2 mirrored) * * - 32 + 32 HDD's * * - 32 + 32 HDD's * * * - 32 HDD's * * * - 32 + 32 HDD's * * * - 32 HDD'</pre>
	<ul> <li>- max. 256 Logical disks, here 3390s</li> <li>* ***********************************</li></ul>
, CHPIDs with new type of channel path (ISD)	CHPID PATH=(3D),TYPE=ISD CHPID PATH=(3E),TYPE=ISD * 2nd drawer (= mirrored disks of 1st drawer) CHPID PATH=(38),TYPE=ISD
 Defines Integrated System Device channel paths (internal SCSI). The path-IDs are prescribed from the H/W configuration.	CHPID PATH=(39),TYPE=ISD CHPID PATH=(3A),TYPE=ISD * 3rd drawer
An ISD channel path can only be assigned to 1 control unit (i.e. no daisy chaining of control units possible)	CHPID PATH=(10),TYPE=ISD CHPID PATH=(11),TYPE=ISD CHPID PATH=(12),TYPE=ISD * 4th drawer (= mirrored disks of 3rd drawer) CHPID PATH=(00),TYPE=ISD CHPID PATH=(00),TYPE=ISD
, CNTLUNIT definitions	CHPID PATH=(OE),TYPE=ISD *** CU_O ************************************
CNTLUNIT CUNUMBR=,PATH=(,),UNITADD=((00,48)),UNIT=3990 The 2 ISD channel paths go to 1 (logical) 3990 control unit	CNTLUNIT CUNUMBR=4C00,PATH=(3C,58),UNITADD=((00,48)),UNIT=3990 IODEVICE ADDRESS=(200,48),CUNUMBR=4C00,UNITADD=00,UNIT=3390 * CU 1 *********************************
(must be the original path and the path to the mirror-HDDs) UNITADD always must start at 00, with a range of 48, (it may be 32 for only the '3rd' CU for -10	<ul> <li>(connects max. 6 HDDs = max. 48 logical disks)</li> <li>CNTLUNIT CUNUMBR=4D00,PATH=(5D,59),UMITADD=((00,48)),UMIT=3990</li> <li>TODEVICE ADDRESS=(240,480),CUMUMBR=4D00,UMITADD=00,UMIT=3390</li> </ul>
IODEV/ICE definitions	*** CU_2 ************************************
, IDDEVICE DETINITIONS IODEVICE ADDRESS=(cuu,48),CUNUMBR=,UNITADD=00,UNIT=3380 or3390	* *** CU_3 ************************************
orssu UNITADD must be 00, if only 1 IODEVICE statement is given per CNTLUNIT	CNTLUNIT CUNUMBR=7800,PATH=(10,0C),UNITADD=((00,48)),UNIT=3990 IODEVICE ADDRESS=(300,48),CUNUMBR=7800,UNITADD=00,UNIT=3390 * CU_4 ************************************
STADET=Y is the default for ISD channel paths	* (connects max. 6 HDDs = max. 48 logical disks) CNTLUNIT CUNUMBR-7900,PATH=(11,0D).UNITADD=((00,48)).UNIT=3990 IODEVICE ADDRESS=(340,48).CUNUMBR=7900,UNITADD=00,UNIT=3390
Refer also to the IOCP example on next foil	*** CU_5 ************************************
Further MP 2000 ID References	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk
	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk
Further MP 2000 ID References	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info " No cache settings possible/required
Further MP 2000 ID References	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info " No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted " Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK4 on MKTTOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info " No cache settings possible/required CACHE ON OFF not accepted " Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK4 on MKITOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative Internal Disk for S/390 Multiprise 2000, G221-9010-00 Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide and ESCON CTC	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info " No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted " Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS Í DASD Fast Write must be ACTIVE
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK4 on MKTOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative Internal Disk for S/390 Multiprise 2000, G221-9010-00 Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide and ESCON CTC Reference, GC38-0401-04 IBM Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Marketing Flash	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info " No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted " Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK on MKTOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative Internal Disk for S/390 Multiprise 2000, G221-9010-00 Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide and ESCON CTC Reference, GC38-0401-04 IBM Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Marketing Flash by John Hopkins, IBM SSD, 11/22/96, 3 pages Available to your IBM representative	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info " No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted " Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu.STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu.STATUS Í DASD Fast Write must be ACTIVE 'NVS available' does not assure that Fast Write is really used
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK4 on MKTTOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative Internal Disk for S/390 Multiprise 2000, G221-9010-00 Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide and ESCON CTC Reference, GC38-0401-04 IBM Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Marketing Flash by John Hopkins, IBM SSD, 11/22/96, 3 pages	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info " No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted " Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS Í DASD Fast Write must be ACTIVE 'NVS available' does not assure that Fast Write is really used " REPORT statistics
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK4 on MKTTOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative Internal Disk for S/390 Multiprise 2000, G221-9010-00 Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide and ESCON CTC Reference, GC38-0401-04 IBM Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Marketing Flash by John Hopkins, IBM SSD, 11/22/96, 3 pages Available to your IBM representative 9672 SAP Performance and Configuration Guide WCC Flash 9666.5, 11/96, 4 pages Available to your IBM representative S/390 Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Subsystem -User's Guide-, SA24-4261-02	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info " No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted " Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS Í DASD Fast Write must be ACTIVE 'NVS available' does not assure that Fast Write is really used " REPORT statistics CACHE UNIT=cuu,REPORT CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,REPORT Í ID 'WRITE hits' do NOT mean that IDFW is active or installed Cache-WRITE 'hits' are shown and NOT an indication for IDFW
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK4 on MKTTOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative Internal Disk for S/390 Multiprise 2000, G221-9010-00 Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide and ESCON CTC Reference, GC38-0401-04 IBM Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Marketing Flash by John Hopkins, IBM SSD, 11/22/96, 3 pages Available to your IBM representative 9672 SAP Performance and Configuration Guide WSC Flash 9646.5, 11/96, 4 pages Available to your IBM representative \$/390 Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Subsystem -User's Guide-, SA24-4261-02 \$/390 Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Subsystem -Reference Manual- SA24-4260-1	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info , No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted , Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS Í DASD Fast Write must be ACTIVE 'NVS available' does not assure that Fast Write is really used , REPORT statistics CACHE UNIT=cuu,REPORT CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,REPORT Í ID 'WRITE hits' do NOT mean that IDFW is active or installed Cache-WRITE 'hits' are shown and NOT an indication for IDFW active, just for a WRITE, where the track was already in cache The completion still may be signalled to S/W only when data are on the HDD, i.e. W/o Fast Write being active.
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK4 on MKTOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative Internal Disk for S/390 Multiprise 2000, G221-9010-00 Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide and ESCON CTC Reference, GC38-0401-04 IBM Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Marketing Flash by John Hopkins, IBM SSD, 11/22/96, 3 pages Available to your IBM representative 9672 SAP Performance and Configuration Guide WSC Flash 9666.5, 11/96, 4 pages Available to your IBM representative S/390 Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Subsystem -User's Guide-, SA24-6261-02 S/390 Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Subsystem -Reference Manual-	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info , No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted , Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS Í DASD Fast Write must be ACTIVE 'NVS available' does not assure that Fast Write is really used , REPORT statistics CACHE UNIT=cuu,REPORT CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,REPORT Í ID 'WRITE hits' do NOT mean that IDFW is active or installed Cache-WRITE 'hits' are shown and NOT an indication for IDFW active, just for a WRITE, where the track was already in cache The completion still may be signalled to S/W only when data are on the HDD, i.e. W/o Fast Write being active.
Further MP 2000 ID References Further MP 2000 ID References For more info on the Internal Disk, refer to IBM S/390 Multiprise 2000 Server -Internal Disk Performance- White Paper, IBM SSD. INTDISK4 on MKTTOOLS, 08/98 Available to your IBM representative Internal Disk for S/390 Multiprise 2000, 6221-9010-00 Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide and ESCON CTC Reference, GC38-0401-04 IBM Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Marketing Flash by John Hopkins, IBM SSD, 11/22/96, 3 pages Available to your IBM representative 9672 SAP Performance and Configuration Guide WSC Flash 9646.5, 11/96, 4 pages Available to your IBM representative \$/390 Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Subsystem -User's Guide-, SA24-4261-02 \$/390 Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Subsystem -Reference Manual- SA24-4261-02 \$/390 Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk Subsystem -Reference Manual- SA24-4260-1 -FBA to ECKD Migration Aid, Internal Disk for the Multiprise 2001	VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk VSE CACHE Command for Internal Disk Applies to MP 2000 and MP 3000 Internal Disk Use the VSE CACHE command to display cache info , No cache settings possible/required CACHE ONIOFF not accepted , Check for real usage of IDFW/IDRFW Check that IDFW is really used (VSE/ESA V2) via CACHE UNIT=cuu,STATUS and CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS Í DASD Fast Write must be ACTIVE 'NVS available' does not assure that Fast Write is really used , REPORT statistics CACHE UNIT=cuu,REPORT CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,REPORT Í ID 'WRITE hits' do NOT mean that IDFW is active or installed Cache-WRITE 'hits' are shown and NOT an indication for IDFW active, just for a WRITE, where the track was already in cache The Internal Disk cache management itself has only ulmited are on the HDD, i.e. W/o Fast Write being active. The Internal Disk cache management itself has only limited



#### MP 3000 ID Config. Scheme ... Logical Volume Types 'Logical Capacity' Logical Volume Type Regions used #Cvlinders 3380J 3380E 3380K 885 1770 2655 630 1260 1890 MB 2 1113 2226 3339 10017 946 MB 1892 2838 8514 3390-1 3390-2 3390-3 3390-9 1 2 3 0 'Regions' are ID internal allocation units Bytes per track: 3380 47476 3390 56664 1 Higher exploitable capacity with 3390 volumes 1 Different logical volumes now can coexist within a **RAID** array HDD Characteristics Ultrastar 18ZX 3.5" Disks & Interposer (HDD Carrier Assembly) MP 2000 ID MP 3000 ID Ultrastar 18XP \*1 SCSI 18ZX SSA Capacity (512 byte) 18.2 GB 18.2 GE Avg SEK Time Latency Data Rate(Inst) MB/sec (Sust) MB/sec SSA Feature MB/sec Buffer Size(used) 10020 RPM 6.5 msec 2.99msec 23.4 - 30.4 17.4 - 23.4 40 1M 7200 RPM 7.5 msec 4.17msec 11.5 - 22.4 .5 M \*1 MP 2000 ID also had 9.1 GB HDDs WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM J.26 MP 3000 ID Performance Aspects ... Performance Aspects (cont'd) DFW may be reset by ID, if NVS not fully functional ,, IBE is optional, BUT no more needed for ID DEW 1 Check status via CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,STATUS DFW must be ACTIVE, NVS must be ON Fast Write misses for Update WITEs are only ,, obtained at first reference of a track (if format is 'unpredictable') at a subsequent reference, if track has been discarded meanwhile from cache and if track format is 'unpredictable'. Format WRITEs usually are hits (since formatting channel pgms usually start at begin-of-track) Seq. performance is better than on MP 2000 ID ,, Holds for READs and WRITEs, especially for single stream: – Faster HDD – Overlapped operations to HDDs of RAID–5 array – High SSA loop capacity (mult. streams) No Sequential Detect function in ID ,, Thus, it is still important for the S/W to use SEQ caching indication in ECKD channel programs in order to initiate pre-staging in a cached I/O subsystem. (Each HDD does seq. pre-stage anyhow, until interrupted, so the benefit may be no more as huge as with former HDDs)

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

J.28

### MP 3000 ID Performance Aspects

#### **HDD Failure**

	<ul> <li>All data from all oth</li> <li>I/O accesses from pro</li> <li>To limit the performa</li> <li>Only part of the HDD</li> <li>'grabbed' for that re</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>To limit the performa</li> <li>Only part of the HDD</li> </ul>	cessor (production	) continues
	Only part of the HDD		i) concinaes
	Only part of the HDD	nce impact on prod	uction
	grabbed for char re	access capability build	(MB/sec) is being
	-> HDD rebuild does not and does not take to	impact production o long (appr. 1 ho	too much, ur)
	rformance Aspects		
"	Cache size in S/390 configured 32 MB in increments of 3		e flexibly
	Use same rule of thumb a		e generously):
	í Use about 1 to 3	MB cache for	1 GB of data
	This is a 'Cache to		
	Another Rule-of-Thumb (R		
	Í Use about 1 to 3	MB cache per	1 IO/sec
	Both ROTs coincide per installed GB DA	for an average 'Ac SD (refer to Chart	cess Density' of 1
	So, it may be benef		
	í Leave enough ma	ain storage for	VSE/ESA
	Verv rough rule for	VSE: up to 6 MB p	er MIPS consumed .
	- to allow good ex	ploitation of Data e safe side and do	
	- to allow good ex - to just be on th	e safe side and do	not page
WK/I	- to allow good ex - to just be on th	e safe side and do opyright IBM	not page
	- to allow good ex - to just be on th	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A	not page
	- to allow good ex - to just be on th HJU 2001-07-15 C MP 3000 ID Pe	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A	not page
Pe	- to allow good ex - to just be on th HJU 2001-07-15 C MP 3000 ID Pe	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A	not page
	- to allow good ex - to just be on th - to just be on th 	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A cont'd)	spects
Pe	- to allow good ex - to just be on th 1JU 2001-07-15 C MP 3000 ID Pe	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A cont'd)	spects
<b>Pe</b>	- to allow good ex - to just be on th HJU 2001-07-15 C MP 3000 ID Pe rformance Aspects (C Record Caching If a track is predictabl being read from DASD, ot	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A cont'd)	spects
<b>Pe</b>	- to allow good ex - to just be on th HJU 2001-07-15 C MP 3000 ID Pe rformance Aspects (C Record Caching If a track is predictabl being read from DASD, ot Unit of Staging In case of a cache miss,	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A cont'd) e format, only the herwise all track	<pre>&gt; not page &gt; Spects &gt; pertinent record( is being read</pre>
Pe	- to allow good ex - to just be on th HJU 2001-07-15 C MP 3000 ID Pe rformance Aspects (C Record Caching If a track is predictabl being read from DASD, ot	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A cont'd) e format, only the herwise all track	<pre>&gt; not page &gt; Spects &gt; pertinent record( is being read</pre>
<b>Pe</b>	- to allow good ex - to just be on th HJU 2001-07-15 C MP 3000 ID Pe rformance Aspects (C Record Caching If a track is predictabl being read from DASD, ot Unit of Staging In case of a cache miss,	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A cont'd) e format, only the herwise all track	<pre>&gt; not page &gt; Spects &gt; pertinent record( is being read</pre>
<b>Pe</b>	- to allow good ex - to just be on th HJU 2001-07-15 C MP 3000 ID Pe rformance Aspects (C Record Caching If a track is predictabl being read from DASD, ot Unit of Staging In case of a cache miss,	e safe side and do opyright IBM erformance A cont'd) e format, only the herwise all track the following are ' Predictable'	<pre>&gt; not page &gt; Spects &gt; Spects &gt; pertinent record( is being read &gt; the units staged 'Unpredictable'</pre>

### **MP 3000 ID Performance Hints**

### **Performance Hints**

- I/O Distribution within MP 3000 ID Subsystem ,
  - 1 RAID-5 automatically spreads hot spots and high I/O rate of a volume across all HDDs of an array
  - 1 Still avoid a too high I/O rate to a single logical volume
    - A high IOSQ time in the operating system would be the result, if  $\rm I/Os$  are from CICS or from multiple batch partitions
  - 1 Try to roughly balance I/O activity across SSA loops

### 1 Still, all volumes must be ADDed in VSE as 'ECKD'

Not only a functional requirement, also optimal ECKD channel programs are benefial.

1 For better exploitation of DASD capacity ... use 3390 track format

No performance impact expected for 3380 vs 3390

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

### MP3000 ID Performance Results ...

#### **Measurement Results**

MP3000 Internal Disk Performance						
Case	#VSE vols	#arrays	msec/IO	IO/sec	SAP util	CPU util
PACEX1	3+1	1	1.4 ms	642	23%e	8%
PACEX4	3+4	1	2.3 ms	1470	52%e	20%
PACEX8	4+8	1	3.2 ms	1790	62%e	25%
PACEX16	6+16	2	7.8 ms	1961	69%	31%

PACEXn means n times 7 jobs in 1 partition each
 VSE/ZSA 2.3.2 with Turbo Dispatcher
 R/W ratio = 1.52 (39.7% WRITEs)
 5 HDDs per array (Base CPC only)

- READ hit ratio varied from 0.90 to 0.95 WRITE hit ratio varied from 0.91 to 0.97 Most of msec/IO was DISCONNECT time (as expected)

#### 1 Very very good I/O response times

even at higher I/O load and 1 array only (PACEX8)

The high SAP utilization (vs the CPU utilization) is caused by the very  $\rm I/O$  and WRITE intensive PACEX workload

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

J.32

J.30

### MP3000 ID Performance Results

#### MP3000 ID Performance Results for VSE/ESA

#### Measurement Environment

#### Hardware

- MP 3000 Model H50 (Uni-processor)
- Internal Disk microcode as of 99–11–03
- Fully populated BASE CPC, with 216 GB Internal Disk
- 256 MB Internal Disk cache, as part of processor memory

### Software

- VSE/ESA 2.3.2 with Turbo Dispatcher (status DY44820)

#### Workload

- PACEX batch workload (1, 4, 8, and 16 concurrently active VSE partitions)
- VSE System volumes plus, roughly 1 volume per partition, using mostly 1 RAID-5 array (2 arrays for PACEX16)
- I/O loads are characterized by a R/W ratio of 1.52,
   i.e. 59.7% of all I/Os are WRITEs
   (a relatively high WRITE content for total workloads)

#### Measurement Goals

- Drive the MP3000 Internal Disk with varying I/O rates
- Compare performance values (as far as meaningful/possible) to formerly obtained results for MP2000 ID.

J.31

WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM

#### MP3000 ID Performance Results ...

#### Comparison to MP 2000 (08/97) ID Results

Case M	MP2000->MP3000 ID			
	4F2000->MF3000 ID	Ratio	MP2000->MP3000 ID	Impr.
PACEX1	289 -> 642	2.22	3.3 -> 1.4 ms	2.39
PACEX4	880 -> 1470	1.67	4.2 -> 2.3 ms	1.82
PACEX8	1346 -> 1790	1.33	4.6 -> 3.2 ms	1.44
PACEX16	na -> 1961	na	na -> 7.8 ms	na

1 Much better I/O response times, even at higher I/O rates

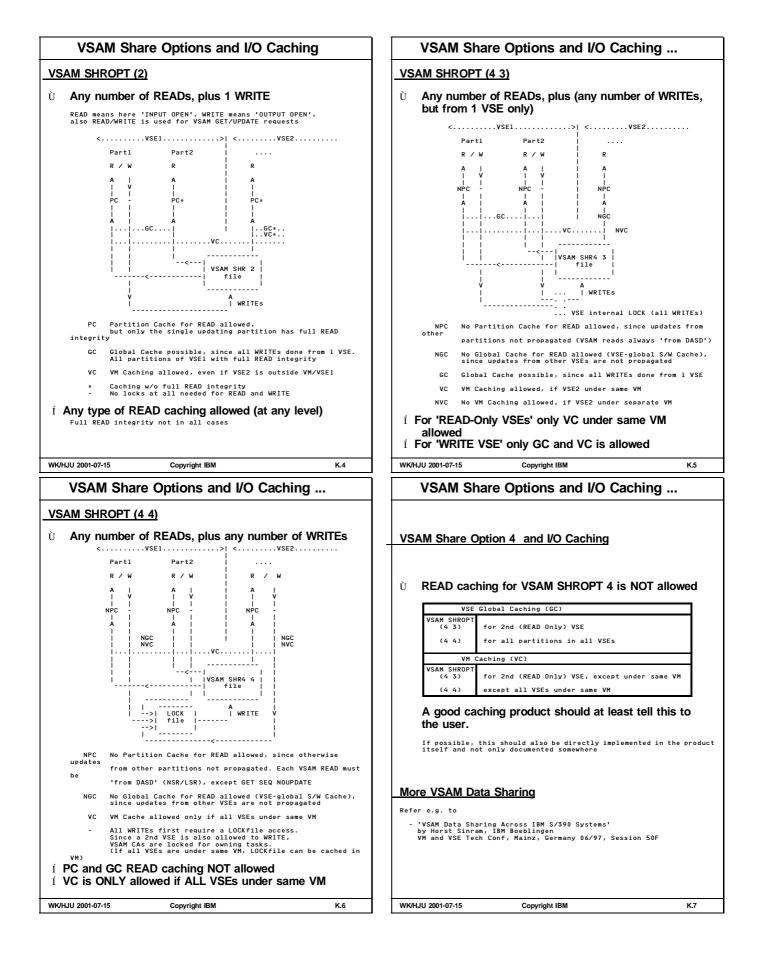
#### PACEX(1) Scenario Consideration

Consideration of e.g. the PACEX1 scenario (no queueing):

1 I/O stream = 1 partition with 18000 I/Os to 1 user volume

WK/I	HJU 2001-07-1	5 Copyrig	ht IBM	J.33
The		tly faster MP3000 sp throughput/speed.	peed only had a minor	impact on the
wou	ld have res	ulted, then.		
use	d :	1000 ms / (0.13+3.34	4) ms = 288 IO/sec	
		d have had the same.	processing speed as	the MP3000 model
		1000 ms / (0.45+3.34 1000 ms / (0.13+1.39		
		I/O rates calculated to the measured one	d with these 2 values es:	
	MP3000:	0.133 ms	1.39 ms	
	MP2000:	0.455 ms	3.34 ms	
		CPU-time   ====	I/O time (msec/IO)	
		0.001		

MP 3000 ID PTFs				DIM and I/O Caching, Global View		
<b>VSE native</b> VSE/ESA PTFs, required for running MP 3000 ID:						
APAR PTF	Component		<b>-</b>			
DY45179 UD51133 UD51133 UD5113 DY45181 UD5107 PQ28600 UQ9002 PQ29648 - The new IOCP CHPID:	5 VSE/AF 2.2 (IC 6 VSE/AF 2.3 (IC 8 VSE/AF 2.3 (IC 7 EREP 1 ICKDSF addt'1 info to 5 refer to new types	CP) CP) PQ26800 of channels				
TYPE=EIO: 'Emulate	System Device chann ed I/O channels'	el' for ID for EMIO				
/ <u>M/VSE</u> PAR VM62180 + VM62111 + VM6231;	2 and noguined to			PART K.		
<ul> <li>allow exploitation</li> </ul>	on of new CCWs (from (does not apply to	ESS) VSE)				
lore Info				DIM and I/O Caching, Global View		
<ul> <li>Internal Disk White Paper. Up Available to your IBM represe</li> </ul>		S				
IBM Ultrastar family specific Via http://www.storage.ibm.co	cations. om					
Multiprise 3000 announcement Via http://www.s390.ibm.com/n				For information on VM/ESA Winidick Coching (MDC)		
<ul> <li>Multiprise 3000 Reference (</li> <li>Multiprise 3000 Product Adv (Web based capacity planning)</li> </ul>	visor			For information on VM/ESA Minidisk Caching (MDC), refer e.g. to 'IBM VSE/ESA VM Guest Performance Considerations'		
<ul> <li>Internal Disk Subsystem Refer</li> <li>Via http://www.ibm.com/server</li> </ul>		25		For all VSAM Shareoption related files, thanks to Horst Sinram VSE/VSAM Development for assistance.		
– Internal Disk Subsystem User Via http://www.ibm.com/server						
- S/390 Multiprise 3000 Integra Performance Report, Nov 99. (	ated LAN Adapter Fea GF22-5136	ture.				
• Multiprise 3000 Technical In IBM Redbook SG24–5633–00, 11,						
Planning and Implementation VM/VSE Technical Conference	for the Multiprise 3 06/2000, Orlando. By	000 Dennis Ng				
К/НЈU 2001-07-15 Сору	rright IBM		J.34	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM K.1		
DIM/Cach	ing Hierarchy	,		Overall Statements		
				Overall Statements		
IM/Caching Hierarchy				" Caching with NVS in the I/O Subsystem		
	Share	ile (work) D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int.		is the only means for WRITE caching w/o any risk		
Full Key VSAM Non-VSAM VSAM LSR READ READ READ	WRITE REA Share	D/WRITE d NonShared	) Level			
Full Key VSAM Non-VSAM VSAM LSR READ READ READ CICS Data Tables	WRITE REA Share	D/WRITE d NonShared		<b>risk</b> (also across processors)		
Full Key VSAM Non-VSAM VSAM LSR READ READ READ	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex	D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int.     	Level       Part.   Cache   'PC'   	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time " All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products		
Full Key VSAM Non-VSAM VSAM LSR READ READ READ CICS Data Tables VSAM LSR (NSR) VSE-global S/W Caching (CACHE/VSE, 0PTI-CACHE, BIM VIO non-volat)	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex 	D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int.	Level	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time , All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a		
Full Key VSAM Non-VSAM VSAM LSR READ READ READ CICS Data Tables VSAM LSR (NSR) VSAM LSR (NSR) VSE-global S/W Caching (CACHE/VSE, OPTI-CACHE,	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex 	D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int.   	Level       Part.   Cache   'PC'   	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works		
Full Key VSAM Non-VSAM VSAM LSR READ READ READ CICS Data Tables VSAM LSR (NSR) VSAM LSR (NSR) VSE-global S/W Caching (CACHE/VSE, 0PTI-CACHE, BIM VIO non-volat)	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex ) 	D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int.   	Level     Part.   Cache   'PC'       Global   Cache   'GC'   YM	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time , All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works and/or the better it can react to workload/access		
Full Key       VSAM       Non-VSAM         VSAM LSR       READ       READ         CICS Data       Tables         Tables          VSAM LSR (NSR)          VSE-global S/W Caching       (CACHE/VSE, OPTI-CACHE, BIM VIO non-volat)         VM MDC Caching       (CACHE-MAGIC)         Multiprise Int. Dis       H/W (Subsystem) Cache         H/W (Subsystem) Caching       Caching	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex )   	D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int.   	Level Part. Cache Cache 'GC' Cache 'GC' VM Cache 'VC'	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time , All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works and/or the better it can react to workload/access pattern changes		
Full Key       VSAM       Non-VSAM         VSAM LSR       READ       READ         CICS Data       Tables         Tables	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex VSE ex Share (VSE ex Share VSE s, VSE s,	D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int. ) VIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Level       Part.   Cache   'PC'       Global   Cache   'CC'     WM Cache 'VC'  HW Cache	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time , All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works and/or the better it can react to workload/access		
Full Key       VSAM       Non-VSAM         VSAM       LSR       READ         CICS       Data         Tables	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex VSE ex block Share (VSE ex block Share Share VSE s, VSE s, Cachir Cachir VM VI Sk W/ NVS ng) Sk W/ NVS ng) Sk Sk W/ NVS Ng) Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk Sk	D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int.   	Level       Part.   Cache   'PC'       Global   Cache   'CC'     WM Cache 'VC'  HW Cache	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time , All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works and/or the better it can react to workload/access pattern changes 1 the more effectively the available real memory		
Full Key       VSAM       Non-VSAM         VSAM LSR       READ       READ         CICS Data       Tables         Tables          VSAM LSR (NSR)          VSE-global S/W Caching       (CACHE/VSE, OPTI-CACHE, BIM VIO non-volat)         VM MDC Caching       (CACHE-MAGIC)         WM MDC Caching       (CACHE-MAGIC)         H/W (Subsystem) Cache       (READ/WRITE Caching)         (VM cache layer is availab)	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex ) 	D/WRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int. ) VIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Level       Part.   Cache   'PC'       Global   Cache   'CC'     WM Cache 'VC'  HW Cache	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works and/or the better it can react to workload/access pattern changes 1 the more effectively the available real memory is exploited 1 the bigger are the overall performance gains " Effective READ caching with full READ integrity		
Full Key       VSAM       Non-VSAM         VSAM LSR       READ       READ         CICS Data       Tables         Tables          VSAM LSR (NSR)          VSE-global S/W Caching       (CACHE/VSE, OPTI-CACHE, BIM VIO non-volat)         VM MDC Caching       (CACHE-MAGIC)         VM MDC Caching       (CACHE-MAGIC)         VH MDC Caching       (CACHE-MAGIC)         VM (Subsystem) Cache       (READ/WRITE Caching)         CACHE HAGIC view, showin       (VM cache layer is availab)         - Categories at top designatt       not file eligibilities         - Naturally, it is not reason	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex VSE ex also VSE S/ VSE S/ VSE S/ Cachir Cachir VM VE sk w/ NVS ng) te only for VM/VSE) e performance benefi nable to implement e VM MDC Caching are	DJWRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int.   	Level       Part.   Cache   'PC'       Global   Cache   'CC'     WM Cache 'VC'  HW Cache	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works and/or the better it can react to workload/access pattern changes 1 the more effectively the available real memory is exploited 1 the bigger are the overall performance gains Effective READ caching with full READ integrity for all participants can only be done Data shared Caching types allowed		
Full Key       VSAM       Non-VSAM         VSAM LSR       READ       READ         CICS Data       Tables         Tables	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex VSE ex also VSE S/ VSE S/ VSE S/ Cachin Cachin VM VI Sk W/ NVS ng) te only for VM/VSE) e performance benefi nable to implement e VM MDC Caching are d between VSEs	DJWRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int. ) VIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Level       Part.   Cache   'PC'       Global   Cache   'CC'     WM Cache 'VC'  HW Cache	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works and/or the better it can react to workload/access pattern changes 1 the more effectively the available real memory is exploited 1 the bigger are the overall performance gains Effective READ caching with full READ integrity for all participants can only be done		
Full Key       VSAM       Non-VSAM         VSAM LSR       READ       READ         CICS Data       Tables         Tables          VSAM LSR (NSR)          VSE-global S/W Caching       (CACHE/VSE, OPTI-CACHE, BIM VIO non-volat)         VM MDC Caching       (CACHE-MAGIC)         WM MDC Caching       (CACHE-MAGIC)         H/W (Subsystem) Cache       (READ/WRITE Caching)         Cache layer is availabi       Categories at top designation of file eligibilities         Naturally, it is not reason          VSE-global S/W caching and except when data are shared	WRITE REA Share (VSE ex VSE ex also VSE S/ VSE S/ Cachin Cachin VM VI Sk W/ NVS ng) te only for VM/VSE) e performance benefi nable to implement e VM MDC Caching are d between VSEs	DJWRITE d NonShared t.)(VSE int. ) VIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Level       Part.   Cache   'PC'       Global   Cache   'CC'     WM Cache 'VC'  HW Cache	risk (also across processors) no impact on CPU-time All S/W DIM means or S/W caching products require additional real memory The more versatile (files eligible) a product is and/or the more global (across VSE partitions) a product works and/or the better it can react to workload/access pattern changes 1 the more effectively the available real memory is exploited 1 the bigger are the overall performance gains Effective READ caching with full READ integrity for all participants can only be done Data shared Caching types allowed Mitchin a single VSE Mitchin e SVSE winder same VM VSE Global Cache GC +VC +HC VSE Global Cache GC +VC +HC		



VSE DIM Means and I/O Caching	VSE DIM Means and I/O Caching
VSE DIM Means and I/O Caching         Individual Statements         (Performance comparisons can only be done if function-wise applicable)         (Performance comparisons can only be done if function-wise applicable)         (CICS Data Tables have unbeatable benefits         but only for full-key KSDS READs         Should be used if applicable         Nould be used if applicable         (VSAM LSR is THE means for 'usual DIM' (most used files)         but subpools should not be too big         A very intelligently implemented S/W cache vendor product may show CPU-time benefits vs 'big' LSR DIM         No measurement results available         VSE-global S/W caching vendor products (caching in VSE storage)         may save some VSE CPU-time, but at least save CP time if under VM         Depends on VM guest and DASD setup         can for SHROPT 4 only be used for the single WRITE-VSE of SHROPT 4 3         (READ caching advantages, similar to e.g. VSAM GSR in MVS)	VSE DIM Means and I/O Caching         Individual Statements (cont'd)         , Virtual Disks         are only for work data,         except when enhanced by a non-volatile option (BIM-VID)         are no 'real caching' products,         since staging/de-staging done by paging         Use VSE VD instead of VM VD, if applicable         , VM MDC for guests         is very versatile         is the only means to cache production data         shared between VSEs under same VM with         uultiple WRITEs (SHROPT 4 3 or 4 4)         Durt         does not apply to native VSE         does not save VSE CPU-time         can only be used across multiple VSEs         if ALL WRITE-VSEs are under this VM            Is well suited to complement usual DIM or any type of S/W caching         Is required/provided anyhow for RAID-5 (RAMAC)
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM K.8	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM K.9
Misc VSE I/O Aspects	File Placement on Disk(s)
	File Placement Within a Disk         Ù       For traditional (non-simulated) S/390 disks put files about in the middle of the pack         (if possible also VTOC, except for VSAM-Only disks)         -> Reduce overall SEEK times         Is less important       if physical S/390 device is cached.         Is unimportant       if S/390 logical device is RAID5 on 3.5" HDDs
	File Placement and Sharing Across S/390 Disks
PART L. Misc VSE I/O Aspects	<ul> <li>In any case, S/390 DASD utilization should be about balanced</li> <li>About overall balanced S/390 DASD utilizations is beneficial not only for physical devices, but to some extend also for simulated devices e.g. via RAID-5. Per (logical) S/390 device only 1 SSCH can be active at 1 point in time (seen from VSE)</li> <li>Put non-shared data on non-shared S/390 disks         This is a general rule which does not only bring performance benefits, but also is reasonable for non-performance reasons</li> <li>Avoid, whenever possible, to ADD S/390 disks as cuu,SHR         Reduces sharing overhead, especially for non-shared files         1 For more hints on DASD Sharing, refer to the</li> </ul>
	VSE/ESA V2 base document

#### General CKD/ECKD VTOC Hints **VTOC Performance** Basics VTOC accesses are done by the Common VTOC General CKD/ECKD VTOC Hints , Handler (CVH) Place VTOCs on the last tracks of a cylinder - at each BAM label read Label read (READ Format-1 Label by name) uses multitrack search. They search, if required, until end-of-cylinder, even if extent (here VTOC) ends at an earlier track. - at each BAM or VSAM space allocation for safety reasons at each VSAM file OPEN and each first usage of a new VSAM extent by a file to check coincidence between catalog and VTOC info (\$\$BOVSOI just reads the VTOC file label (Format-4)) When a new BAM file or VSAM space is defined, it is necessary to read all F1 labels, in order to avoid 'overlap on unexpired file'. Search of the whole VTOC is required – to look for 'equal ids' – to check for overlapping extents Such VTOC CKD/ECKD I/Os read 1 entry each Use only as many tracks as required •• VTOC position/layout is less important for ,, A mostly VSAM owned disk volume may need only 1 track fully VSAM owned volumes cached volumes 1 Reduces time for VTOC accesses Optimized VTOC layout for VSE/ESA V2 system volumes -Used in the Base Install process if 'Automatic VTOC Initialization' was selected VTOC CKD/ECKD Capacities ≢VTOC entries Increased FBA VTOC CISIZE from 1K to 8K ... 3375 3380 3390 9345 51 53 50 45 Reduced CKD/ECKD VTOC size to 4 tracks ,, Tracks 11-15 4 tracks used for VSE system volumes **General Recommendation ICKDSF 16 for VTOC Extension/Relocation** Place VTOC in about the middle of a disk ,, , This may show slight overall seek improvements for multi-thread environments except in cases with VM Partial Pack Minidisks (in spite of reading the volume label by the CVH) Use REFORMAT with EXTVTOC to extend an existing CKD/ECKD VTOC, use REFORMAT with NEWVTOC to move and extend an existing VTOC WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM L.3 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM L.4 **General FBA VTOC Hints BUFSIZE Consideration BUFSIZE Consideration General FBA VTOC Hints** Background info **,**, The CCW translation for $\rm I/O$ operations uses translation buffers (72 byte each) to store copy blocks Use 8K CISIZE ,, 44 byte key + 96 byte data = 140 byte record The number of required translation buffers directly depends on the complexity of a channel program Any copy block is kept at least until the corresponding I/O operation has been completed: For NOFASTTR, buffers are freed after I/O interrupt handling ('re-translation') For FASTTR, buffers are kept for reuse, but at most 1 sec Per FBA-VTOC-I/O 1 CI is read ,, > Bigger CIs reduce the number of VTOC I/Os All copy blocks are handled partition individually (e.g search for FASTTR duplicates), but total bufferspace (BUFS12E) is common for a VSE system. For FASTTR vs NOFASTTR refer to the VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4 performance document **VTOC FBA Capacities** ,, #VTOC entries per CI (0671, 3370, 9332, 9335, 9336) Number of translation buffers required **,**, 1K-CI 8K-CI 57 The BUFSIZE requirement (check via SIR) increases with 4 8K-CIs used for VSE system volumes the complexity of the channel programs used - the total I/O rate - the average msec per I/O the number of active partitions - the number of partitions and the I/O rate for FASTTR WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM 1.5 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM L.6

BUFSIZE Consideration	VSE/ESA Missing Interrupt Handler
	VSE/ESA Missing Interrupt Handler (MIH)
BUFSIZE (cont'd)	" Functional purpose
" No VSE msg when a task is waiting for copy blocks	Detect any interrupt which (for whatsoever reason) was lost, not to react to slow I/Os
STATUS part-id snapsnots may snow you this situation. In seldom, serious cases, message OVO6I NOT ENOUGH BUFFERS FOR CHANNEL PROGRAM TRANSLATION may occur.	After MIH seconds (VSE default is 180 sec), the VSE I/O supervisor displays an emergency message OExx to the console. Depending on the situation and user response, this may initiate recovery to the target device. , <b>Performance aspect</b>
" High water mark for used copy blocks	MIH never should be set smaller than the longest
For problem analysis purposes, the high water mark of used copy blocks can be displayed by the SIR command:	possible I/O operation, initiated by VSE (i.e. not of any subsystem initated long destaging activity).
COPY-BLKS = 00195 HIGH-MARK = 001690 MAX = 3000 With SIR RESET, the HIGH-MARK can be reset.	This is expected to be full cylinder operations or similar long running DASD I/Os.
Note that with FASTTR, HIGH-MARK usually is close to any reasonably	But, usually the MIH value is determined by long tape operations, such as REWIND.
specified MAX (=BUFSIZE) value i.e. the HIGH-MARK value is less informative.	If MIH is smaller, unnecessary messages would be issued costing also CPU time overhead
" For NOFASTTR, BUFSIZE=2000 is mostly sufficient.	" Recommendation
For FASTTR or higher I/O rates, use up to 3000 Via 4K rounding, actual BUFSIZE is larger than specified , In VSE/ESA 2.4 FASTTR is no more available - FASTTR was not easy to handle with - its benefits were very limited - was not so suited for Turbo Dispatcher	Leave the MIH times at the default (MIH=180) Note that in VSE the MIH value applies to all types of I/Os. We are not aware of any requirement to have MIH set > 180 sec. Please contact us if you would need to increase this value, e.g. via the SIR MIH command in VSZ/ESA V2, as documented in the 'Hints and Tips for VSE/ESA' brochure: SIR MIH displays the current MIH setting SIR MIH=nnnn sets MIH value to nnnn sec For general info on MIH, your IBM representative may refer to WSC Flash 9508 'RAMAC MIH Considerations'
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM L.7	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM L.8
I/O Performance PTFs	VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4 Performance APARs/PTFs
	Some 1.3/1.4 APARs/PTFs for I/O performance The next 2 PTFs became available 03/94 and refer to DASD caching with VSAM (thus the PTFs are standard since VSE/ESA 1.3.5): * DY43072 UD90363 VSAM support for 3990-6 Enhancements This PTF provides the VSAM support for 'regular data format' and for 'record cache mode' of the 3990-6 enhancements. Also, seq. bits are set for better cache control during VSAM SPEED load mode. This PTF installed (or by default included since 1.3.5) requires a 9360 u-code patch (E6392AC) * DY43138 UD49025 VSAM B/R cache bit settings for ECKD
	This PTF uses the sequential caching bits instead of bypass cache in order to speed up Backup(!) to a target disk. It also applies to 9345 Cache, which in its latest EC 486392
PART M.	adequately exploits the sequential setting.
I/O Performance PTFs	The next PTF was closed 11/14/94 and is contained in 1.3.6: * DY43312 UD49234 PTFs retrofitted from VSE/ESA 2.1 UD49237
	This PTF contains also an enhancement of the CKD/ECRD conver- sion routine, beneficial for WRITEs with specific CKD channel programs (e.g. CICS journal) The next PTF was closed 02/10/95 and is not included in 1.3.6. * DY43414 UD49333 VSAM B/R restore performance for 3990-3 This PTF sets the beginning of the extent address in the DEFINE EXTENT CCW for VSAM B/R to the begin of the current extent, in order to allow an optimal sequential de-staging for 3990 type of cached control units during RESTORE * DY43335 UD49325 RAMAC Array DASD and Format Writes UD49332 This PTF corrects a problem in the RAMAC Array DASD, which loses a revolution when a standard R0-record is written and a specific bit is not set.
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM M.1	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM M.2

VSE/ESA 1.3/1.4 Performance APARs/PTFs	VSE/ESA 2.1/2.2 Performance APARs/PTFs
Some 1.3/1.4 APARs/PTFs for I/O performance (cont'd)	Some 2.1/2.2 APARs/PTFs for I/O performance
* DY42800 UD48965 VSAM Load mode performance for CI-mode files UD48966 This PTF allows that multiple CIs are chained in the same VSAM channel program when loading or pre-formatting a CNV opened file.	* DY43697/8 UD49662 Some functional and performance enhancements: UD49664 Turbo Dispatcher improvements, UD49671-3 CKD/ECKD conversion routine enhancements, CACHE SUBSYS=cuu,REPORT provides summary data
It was retrofitted from VSE/ESA 2.1 to VSE/ESA 1.3 * DY43207 UD49163 IPL accepts ADD cuu,ECKD for 3380 devices UD49164 if attached to an ECKD capable synchronous	With this PTF, e.g. the CKD/ECKD conversion routine is smarter to CKD programs with format writes if no sector value is given. Also, for native VSE, all data of all devices at a subsystem are now accumulated to directly provide the overall hit ratio.
control unit. Further functional enhancements are included in this fix. * DY43836 UD49763 VSAM I/O performance for ECKD format writes This PTF corrects a VSAM sector value when doing format WRITEs to ECKD attached devices. It applies to all ECKD DASD attachments and especially to RAMAC	* DY43844 UD49764 VSAM I/O performance for ECKD format writes This PTF corrects a VSAM sector value when doing format WRITEs to ECKD attached devices. It applies to all ECKD DASD attachments and especially to RAMAC Array Subsystem. VSAM REPRO is affected and formatting of new extents, no benefit for VSAM B/R Restore.
Array Subsystem. VSAM REPRO is affected and formatting of new extents, no benefit for VSAM B/R Restore	* DY44070 UD49933 VSAM catalog mgmnt, VSAM managed files on ECKD This PTF corrects some VSAM catalog management problems and provides channel program enhancements for VSAM managed SAM files
* DY43416 UD49348 VSAM performance improvement for CNV load mode This PTF allows chaining of several CIs when loading a VSAM file with MACRF=CNV (CI-processing) and VSAM buffering (MACRF=NUB).	on all types of ECKD devices (3380, 3390, 9345, RAMAC) * DY43585 UD49565/66 Misc. problems plus CKD/ECKD conversion
It applies especially to ADSM/VSE if disk space is acquired via DEFINE VOLUME.	This PTF corrects also a performance problem created by non- optimal CKD/ECKD conversion (avoids protection checks for programs with multiple SEEKs)
* DY44358 UD50212/15 Misc. plus RESET of SIR dynamic counters This PTF for VSE/ESA V1.3/1.4 allows to RESET SIR counters, so far incremented always since IPL time.	* DY44277 UD50216/17 Misc. plus RESET of SIR dynamic counters This PTF for VSE/ESA V2.1/2.2 allows to RESET SIR counters, so far incremented always since IPL time. Check the PTF numbers, which may be obsolete meanwhile.
This list of APARs - is provided to give fast hints to resolved performance problems. PTF numbers may have changed, so always refer to APARs when ordering fixes. - is also contained in the base documents	* DY44442 UD50251/52 Misc. plus SIR SMF,cuu command This PTF also includes a supervisor PTF for parallel POWER and an enhanced GETVIS SVA,DETAIL display
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM M.3	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM M.4
Appendix A: Tape Subsystems	3490 Performance Features
	<u>IBM 3490 and 3490E Tape Drives</u> "Survey
	3490 3490E
	Models         D31/D32         A01/A02         D41/D42         C10/C11         A10/A20           B02/B04         /C22         B20/B40
	# tracks 18 18 36 36 36
	IDRC opt. std. std. std. std.
	ACL opt. std. opt/std. std. Max.#channels
	Hax within 113         2         4/8         2         2         4/8           ESCON         1         2/4         2RPQ         2         4/8
DADT N	# drives 1/2 2-16 1/2 1/1/2 2-16
PART N.	Buffersize 2M 2M 2M opt.8M 8M
Appendix A: Tape Subsystems	Rewind speed 4m/sec 4m/sec 5m/sec 5m/sec 5m/sec Perf.Enhancem opt. feature std.
	Autoblocking even w/o IDRC     no     no     yes     yes       # tape strings     1     1/2     1     1     1/2
	# tape strings         1         1/2         1         1         1/2           (controllers)         ADDed as         3490a         3490E         3490E         3490E         3490E
	a ADDed in VSE as 3480 if w/o IDRC - Perf. Enhancement includes a faster compactor and a larger auto-block size (128K)
	Notes: - Uncompacted maximum (instantaneous) data rate: 3MB/sec (independent of channel type and attachment) (2m/sec tape speed at appr. 1500 bytes/mm gives appr. 3000000 bytes/sec = 2929 KB/sec (K=1024)) Value also applies for the aggregate tape-string data rate (1 controller). - 1 drive may be connected to >1 string (controller), but not be concurrently used (flexibility, no capacity benefit) - 3490-ClA and C2A drives in 3494 only - Cartridge capacity (without compaction): 18 track: 200 MB, 36 track: 400 MB, 800 MB (enhanced)

N.1

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Copyright IBM

N.2

WK/HJU 2001-07-15

Determining Factors for Tape Performance			Performa	ince	Overall 3490E Summary			
					3490E vs 3490			
Determining Factors for Actual Tape Throughput			[hroughput		Compared at same tape channel speed			
					<ul> <li>higher cartridge capacity saves change time</li> </ul>			
Achievable I	Effective	Tape Data Ra	ate		<ul> <li>bi-directional recording saves rewind time</li> </ul>			
" Tape atta	achment				" Performance benefits essentially only - if no IDRC is used			
	model a				- at smaller blocksizes			
		ncurrent driv De strinas	es used		caused by autoblocking and 'performance enhancement'			
Number and speed of tape channels					•			
" Speed of supplied tape data					ESCON vs parallel tape channel			
Application characteristics					" Performance benefits only when tape channel(s) become a bottleneck			
	essor spe of DASD				i.e. channel speed for single drive operation,			
Num	ber of DA	SDs			channel capacity for multiple drive operation			
Num	ber and s	speed of DAS	3D channels	5	Tape channels become the more a bottleneck, the			
OTE:					<ul> <li>more drives are used concurrently         (preferrably at separate tape strings)</li> </ul>			
The 4 charts here ( (IBM INTERNAL USE) additional results;	on 3490E per charts. You , if you wis	formance are an r IBM represent h.	excerpt from ative may exp	09/93 lain	- higher the IDRC compaction factor is			
					- fewer tape channels are used			
					<ul> <li>lower job(s) are bound on the DASD side         (multiple DASD channels required)</li> </ul>			
FAST COPY Backup of DOSRE (3 drives) 3390-01 DAS Same results wo	DUMP V S (1 drive) DS at 2 D Duld be obta rives at s lel and 9.0	ions of equal p OLUME, OPT and SYSWK1 (2 OASD channed ined for 3390-0 ame string, 2	riority, 34/60 TIMIZE=4 drives) and us 2/03 2 tape char	ser volume Mels	OPTIMIZE 4 vs OPTIMIZE 1 Performance " Environment VSE/ESA 1.3.2 9121-190 processor, ESA LPAR 3390-01 DASDs (uncached) at ESCON channel 3490E B40, Mode='08' (IDRC), ESCON 8119 DASD tracks dumped (DOSRES), 334 MB total			
4.5 MB paral					" FAST COPY OPTIMIZE Results			
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta	-							
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta	-				OPTIMIZE 1 OPTIMIZE 4 Delta / Factor			
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta	Channel type	Options	Revolutions ∕track read	EDR MB/sec	Elapsed time         230 sec         147 sec         -36%         1.56			
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta	Channel	IDRC 2.87:1	/track read	MB/sec				
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta AST COPY Res	Channel type DASD,tape ESCON, "	IDRC 2.87:1 no IDRC IDRC, OPT=1	/track read 1.27 1.27 2.00	MB/sec 2.27 2.27 1.45	Elapsed time         230 sec         147 sec         -36%         1.56           CPU-time         n/a         n/a         -62%         2.65           DASD I/Os         8205         1711         -79%         4.77			
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta AST COPY Res	Channel type DASD,tape ESCON,	IDRC 2.87:1	/track read	MB/sec 2.27 2.27	Elapsed time         230 sec         147 sec         -36%         1.56           CPU-time         n/a         n/a         -62%         2.65           DASD I/Os         8205         1711         -79%         4.77           Tape I/Os         8164         1675         -79%         4.77           Revol./track         2.00         1.27         -36%         1.56			
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta AST COPY Res	Channel type DASD,tape ESCON, "	IDRC 2.87:1 no IDRC IDRC, OPT=1 IDRC 4.30:1	/track read 1.27 1.27 2.00 1.27	MB/sec 2.27 2.27 1.45 2.46	Elapsed time         230 sec         147 sec         -36%         1.56           CPU-time         n/a         n/a         -62%         2.65           DASD I/Os         8205         1711         -79%         4.77           Tape I/Os         8164         1675         -79%         4.77           Revol./track         2.00         1.27         -36%         1.56           Single FAST COPY is DASD revolution bound         (as expected)         -36%         1.56			
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta AST COPY Res	Channel type DASD,tape ESCON, " Parallel " ESCON,	IDRC 2.87:1 no IDRC IDRC, OPT=1 IDRC 4.30:1 no IDRC IDRC -	/track read 1.27 1.27 2.00 1.27	MB/sec 2.27 2.27 1.45 2.46 2.42 4.43	Elapsed time         230 sec         147 sec         -36%         1.56           CPU-time         n/a         n/a         -62%         2.65           DASD I/Os         8205         1711         -79%         4.77           Tape I/Os         8164         1675         -79%         4.77           Revol./track         2.00         1.27         -36%         1.56           Eff.Data Rate         1.45 MB/sec         2.27 MB/sec         +56%         1.56           Single FAST COPY is DASD revolution bound         1.27         -36%         1.56			
4.5 MB paral DASD and to AST COPY Res Single drive " " Two drives " Three drives	Channel type DASD,tape ESCON, " Parallel ESCON, Parallel ESCON,	IDRC 2.87:1 no IDRC IDRC, OPT=1 IDRC 4.30:1 no IDRC - IDRC - IDRC -	/track read 1.27 1.27 2.00 1.27 1.29 - -	MB/sec 2.27 2.27 1.45 2.46 2.42 4.43 3.41 5.14	Elapsed time         230 sec         147 sec         -36%         1.56           CPU-time         n/a         n/a         -62%         2.65           DASD I/Os         8205         1711         -79%         4.77           Tape I/Os         8164         1675         -36%         1.56           Eff.Data Rate         2.00         1.27         -36%         1.56           Single FAST COPY is DASD revolution bound (as expected)         OPTIMIZE 4 much more efficient         Elapsed and CPU-time           Coperal OPTIMIZE Hints         Coperal OPTIMIZE Hints         Coperal OPTIMIZE Hints         Coperal OPTIMIZE Hints			
4.5 MB paral DASD and to AST COPY Res Single drive " " Two drives Three_drives Conclusions Higher overa if channels	Channel type DASD,tape ESCON, "" Parallel ESCON, Parallel ESCON, Parallel	IDRC 2.87:1 no IDRC IDRC, OPT=1 IDRC 4.30:1 no IDRC IDRC - IDRC - IDRC - DRC - DRC -	/track read	MB/sec 2.27 2.27 1.45 2.46 2.42 4.43 3.41 5.14 3.56	Elapsed time         230 sec         147 sec         -36%         1.56           CPU-time         n/a         n/a         -62%         2.65           DASD I/Os         8205         1711         -79%         4.77           Tape I/Os         8164         1675         -79%         4.77           Revol./track         2.00         1.27         -36%         1.56           Single FAST COPY is DASD revolution bound (as expected)         (as expected)         OPTIMIZE 4 much more efficient           Elapsed and CPU-time         CPU-time         CPU-time         CPU-time         CPU-time			
4.5 MB paral DASD and ta AST COPY Res Single drive "" "" "" "" "" "" "" "" "" "" "" "" ""	Channel type DASD,tape ESCON, "" Parallel ESCON, Parallel ESCON, Parallel	IDRC 2.87:1 no IDRC IDRC, OPT=1 IDRC 4.30:1 no IDRC IDRC - IDRC - IDRC - DRC - DRC -	/track read	MB/sec 2.27 2.27 1.45 2.46 2.42 4.43 3.41 5.14 3.56	Elapsed time         230 sec         147 sec         -36%         1.56           CPU-time         n/a         n/a         -62%         2.65           DASD I/Os         8205         1711         -79%         4.77           Tape I/Os         8164         1675         -79%         4.77           Revol./track         2.00         1.27         -36%         1.56           Eff.Data Rate         1.45 MB/sec         2.27 MB/sec         +56%         1.56           Single FAST COPY is DASD revolution bound (as expected)         0PTIMIZE 4 much more efficient         Elapsed and CPU-time         Elapsed and CPU-time           "         General OPTIMIZE Hints         -         0PTIMIZE 1/2/3/5 tracks per DASD and tape I/0) is specifiable for DUMP (ALL/VOLUME/FILE) only, i.e. not for COPY or RESTORE			

Autom. Cartridge Loader Improvements	3590 High Performance Tape Subsystem
	3590 High Performance Tape Subsystem -Summary-
	Supported with VSE/ESA 2.2.0 and up. To be added in VSE with ADD cuu,TPA
Automatic Cartridge Loader Improvements	<b>ù</b> High Reliability/Capacity/Performance
	Ù New tape cartridge storage technology
" Improved ACL selection in VSE/ESA 2.1:	<ul> <li>- 8x16=128 longitudinal serpentine tracks</li> <li>(4x forward+backward, writing 16 tracks each time, addt'l servo tracks)</li> </ul>
'exhaustive' complemented by asynchronous	-> Reduced avg REWIND times (bi-directional recording)
'alternate'	Cartridge capacity of 10/up to 30 GB (uncompacted/compacted)
via ACL=YES/NO parameter	<ul> <li>Ù High tape speed and data rates</li> <li>- 2 meter/sec</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>9 MB/sec device peak (instantaneous) data rate (READ and WRITE, 3 times as much as 3490E)</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Improved elapsed times for tape activities (ACL=NO)</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Search speed 15x3490E = 166 MB/sec</li> </ul>
(ACL=NO)	Ù On S/390: ESCON attachment only
- for non-3490E cartridges	ù 3590-A00 and -A50 controller
Rewind always required - if 3490E cartridge not full	<ul> <li>l or 2 ESCON channel paths, up to 43 km distance</li> <li>up to 4 drives (B11s and B1As)</li> <li>2x64 logical channels</li> </ul>
(Partial) Rewind in spite of bi-directional recording	For 2 ESCON channels (or 3490E-mode), DY44364 is required
	<b>Ù</b> 3590-B11 and -B1A drives
	B11: 10-cartridge Automatic Cartridge Facility (ACF) (Random Mode not supported with ESCON) B1A: Use in 3494 Tape Library Server, no ACF
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM N.7	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM N.8
3590 High Performance Tape Subsystem	3590 High Performance Tape Subsystem
3590 Tape Subsystem -More Details- Ù Revised compaction technology (LZ1)	3590 Tape Modes TPA architecture as such allows many mode settings: '00' to '0F' (buffered) '20' to '2F' (un-buffered)
	TPA architecture as such allows many mode settings: '00' to '0F' (buffered) '20' to '2F' (un-buffered) (those from 3480/3490, plus more by new WRITE formats 0 to 7). For the 3590, only the WRITE formats 0 Use device default 1 3590 cartridge format 7 Use media default are valid, all resulting in the same effective (3590) mode. Using WRITE format 0, the following modes apply for 3590s Uncompacted Compacted Buffered write 00 08 (default) Tape-write-immediate 20 28
<ul> <li>W Revised compaction technology (LZ1)</li> <li>W Resources per 3590 drive and peak data rates         <ul> <li>A00 A50-&gt;B11-&gt; B11-&gt; ScoreB11-&gt; </li></ul></li></ul>	TPA architecture as such allows many mode settings: '00' to '0F' (buffered) '20' to '2F' (un-buffered) (those from 3480/3490, plus more by new WRITE formats 0 to 7). For the 3500, only the WRITE formats 0 Use device default 1 3590 cartridge format 7 Use media default are valid, all resulting in the same effective (3590) mode. Using WRITE format 0, the following modes apply for 3590s <u>Uncompacted Compacted</u> <u>Buffered write</u> 00 08 (default) <u>Tape-write-immediate</u> 20 28 Mode 08 is the default mode, valid if both - the 5590 drives have been ADDed w/o any mode and - the ASSGN is done w/o specifying a mode value
<ul> <li>W Revised compaction technology (LZ1)</li> <li>W Resources per 3590 drive and peak data rates         <ul> <li>A00 A50-&gt;B11-&gt; B11-&gt; S0-&gt;B11-&gt; S0-&gt;B11-&gt; Loom-1  buffer  cartridge  Iont-1  buffer  cartridge  Iont-1</li></ul></li></ul>	TPA architecture as such allows many mode settings: '00' to '0F' (buffered) '20' to '2F' (un-buffered) (those from 3480/3490, plus more by new WRITE formats 0 to 7). For the 3590, only the WRITE formats 0 Use device default 1 3590 cartridge format 7 Use media default are valid, all resulting in the same effective (3590) mode. Using WRITE format 0, the following modes apply for 3590s $\frac{Uncompacted}{(default)}$ Mode 08 is the default mode, valid if both - the 3590 drives have been ADDed w/o any mode and - the ASSCN is done w/o specifying a mode value For performance reasons, mode 08 should be used
<ul> <li>W Revised compaction technology (LZ1)</li> <li>Resources per 3590 drive and peak data rates         <ul> <li>A00 A50-&gt; B11-&gt; S0-&gt; B11-&gt; S0-&gt; S0-&gt; B11-&gt; S0-&gt; B11-&gt; </li></ul></li></ul>	TPA architecture as such allows many mode settings: '00' to '0F' (buffered) '20' to '2F' (un-buffered) (those from 3480/3490, plus more by new WRITE formats 0 to 7). For the 390, only the WRITE formats 0 Use device default 1 3590 cartridge format 7 Use media default are valid, all resulting in the same effective (3590) mode. Using WRITE format 0, the following modes apply for 3590s Mode 08 is the default mode, valid if both 1 the 3590 drives have been ADDed w/o any mode and 1 the ASSGN is done w/o specifying a mode value For performance reasons, mode 08 should be used <b>Performance Remarks</b> - Utmost achievable effective (sustained) data rates
<ul> <li>         Were the formation formation for the formation formation formation for the formation formation for the formation forma</li></ul>	TPA architecture as such allows many mode settings: '00' to '0F' (buffered) '20' to '2F' (un-buffered) (those from 3480/3490, plus more by new WRITE formats 0 to 7). For the 3590, only the WRITE formats 0 Use device default 1 3590 cartridge format 7 Use media default are valid, all resulting in the same effective (3590) mode. Using WRITE format 0, the following modes apply for 3590s Mode 08 is the default mode, valid if both 1 the 3590 drives have been ADDed w/o any mode and the ASSCM is done w/o specifying a mode value For performance reasons, mode 08 should be used
<ul> <li>Were the second s</li></ul>	TPA architecture as such allows many mode settings:         .'00' to '2F' (buffered)         '20' to '2F' (un-buffered)         Chose from 3480/3490, plus more by new WRITE formats 0 to 7).         For the 3590, only the WRITE formats         0 Use device default         1 3590 cartridge format         7 Use media default         1 3590 cartridge format         7 Use media default         are valid, all resulting in the same effective (3590) mode.         Using WRITE format 0, the following modes apply for 3590s         Mode 08 is the default mode, valid if both         .'the 3590 drives have been ADDed way mode and         .'the ASSGN is done w/o specifying a mode value         For performance reasons, mode 08 should be used <b>Petformance Remarks</b> • Utmost achievable effective (sustained) data rates (no DASD involved, 3:1 compression ratio, single drive)

	590 High Performance Tape Subsystem	3591 High Performance Tape Control Unit
Ù Ù	<pre>3590 Microcode Performance Patch A performance enhancement for chained READs and WRITEs has been developed and was integrated into any u-code (EC-) level 01/97. Make sure you have that level for performance reasons Eeminder The following, taken from the announcement, again must be understood: The actual throughput a customer may achieve is a function of many components, such as</pre>	3591 High Performance Tape Control Unit 3591 High Performance Tape Control Unit Announced 03/96, available since 05/96 , Rackmounted control unit 3591-A01 , ESCON attached to S/390 processors 1 ESCON channel per 3591 , Attaches 1 to 4 3590-B11 tape drives , Appears to S/W as '3490E' Í Allows to use 3590 technology w/o new S/W Add in VSE/ESA as 'ADD cuu,3490E'
WICH	<ul> <li>IBM 3590 High Performance Tape Subsystem Introduction and Planning Guide, GA32-0329-00 05/95, 82 pages</li> <li>IBM 3590 Tape Subsystem, Presentation Guide, G325-3306-01 (09/96), as G3253306 package on MKTTOOLA</li> <li>VSE/ESA Enhancements, Version 2.2, SC33-6629-00, 12/96</li> <li>UJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM N.11</li> </ul>	For more info refer to: • IBM 3591 Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide, GA32-0558 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM N.12
WIN	3494 Tape Library Dataserver	WK/HJU 2001-07-15         Copyright IBM         N.12           3494 Virtual Tape Server
	A Tape Library Dataserver Anates manual tape handling Tape Library with modular coexistence of 3490E and 3590 tape drives 3590 ElA-, C2A-models (1 to 16 drives) 3590 BlAmodels (1 to 16 drives) Cartridge accessor on a rail system From 8 up to 16 frames for flexible configuration/capacity . Up to 187 TB (compacted 3590) . Up to 187 TB (compacted 3590) . Up to 6240 cartridges Cross platform support Common architecture with 3495 1 Magstar Virtual Tape Server can be included Refer to next foil	Magstar 3494 Virtual Tape Server (VTS)         Expands IBM tape automation
		WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM N.14

## 3494 and VTS

# Appendix B: IOCP and Performance

VSE Support	
3494 3495	7
w/o VTS w/ VTS w/o VTS w/ VTS	
VSE/ESA native         1.3.5+PTFa)         no         no         no           VM/VSE         1.3.5+PTF         1.3.5+PTF         no c)         no	
<ul> <li>VM/VSE 1.3.5+PTF 1.3.5+PTF no c) no</li> <li>VSE tape mgmnt system highly recommended for usage reasons (EPIC/VSE, DYNAM/T, from CA and BVS ESA, from infosoft (VM/VSE))</li> </ul>	
- PTF is UD90367/90368 (APAR DY43306)	PART O.
<ul> <li>a) Native support provided by a LAN attachment to the 3494 Library Manager (Library Conytrol Path)</li> <li>b) 3494-Bl6 has no LAN attachment, ESCON only</li> <li>c) might work, but not supported</li> </ul>	Appendix B: IOCP and Performance
More info on 3494/VTS/VSE	
<ul> <li>IBM 3494 Tape Library Dataserver and VSE/ESA, 08/96,</li> </ul>	For general information on IOCP, refer to 'Input/Output Configuration Program User's Guide',
<ul> <li>consists of 3 documents. As VSE3494 PACKAGE on IBMVSE tools</li> <li>IBM Magstar 3494 Tape Library, G325-3300-05, 09/96 Presentation Guide, as G3253300 package on MKTTOOLS</li> <li>IBM Magstar Virtual Tape Server, G325-3322-00, 09/96 Presentation Guide, as G3253322 package on MKTTOOLS</li> </ul>	disk GC38-0401-07, 04/98 (includes Multiprise 2000 Internal Disk) Refer also to APAR DY44630 (PTF UD50566) for VSE IOCP.
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM	N.15 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM 0.1
IOCP Introduction	IOCP Modifications
IOCP Introduction IOCP = Input/Output Configuration Program	<b>IOCP Modifications</b> To modify the IOCP (with any text editor), there are two possibilities:
<ul> <li>Configures the Channel Subsystem of XA/370, ESA/370 or ESA/390 capable processo</li> <li>E.g. 4381s, ES/9000s or 9672 CMOS servers</li> </ul>	rs included in processor microcode
$\check{\upsilon}$ Uses for this task a source input deck, the	to be edited on the Service Processor (SVP) of the ES/9000 or S/390 9672 processors
IOCDS = Input/Output Configuration Data Set	serviced via MES
Ù The IOCDS can be	
modified with any text editor	To use the latest IOCP version, install the latest microcode level on the processor
generated (Build) by the IOCP	" Operating System based
stored on the hard-disk of the service proc	
<ul> <li>New IOCDS is active, after processor has been IMLed</li> </ul>	to be edited with e.g. VSE/ICCF, VSE/DWF serviced via PTFs
<ul> <li>(also known as POR = Power-On-Reset)</li> <li>Several IOCDSs may be defined/saved, but only 1 IOCDS is active at any point in time</li> </ul>	Current IOCP version is 1.4 (1.5 for Multiprise) Introduced with DY43581 (VSE/ESA V2) or DY43491 (VSE/ESA V1)
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM	0.2 WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM 0.3

	Hardware Positioning of the IOCDS			
IOCP Versions				
The IOCP is available in different versions (contained in VSE/ESA base since 1.3):	Hardware Positioning	of the IOCDS		
"IXP IOCP	<u>Haranaro i contennig</u>			
Required for ES/9221 integrated adapters (e.g. ICA)		Assignment of to	Change in Assignm requires	
Refer to GC38-0097	VSE ADD	cuu > VSE	IPL	
" IZP IOCP	VM	cuu > Guest	Guest IPL/SET RDEV	
Latest version, required for 9672 CMOS servers, for ESCON, EMIF,		(ATTACH, DEDICATE)		
not usable for ES/9221 integrated adapters Refer to GC38-0401	LPAR image (optional)	Storage, Mode CHPID > 370 channel (S/370 mode only)	LPAR Activation	
"Which version to be used?	IOCDS	cuu > CHPID	IML (POR)	
Stand-Alone: - correct version is used since in microcode Must be used on a newly installed machine		A Customer IBM Hardware SE V		
VSE based: - use IXPIOCP or IZPIOCP in EXEC statement	H/W Configuration	CHPID > Hardware	Power Off∕On	
Error messages show which version is used : Error msg IXPxxxx - IXPIOCP used Error msg IZPxxxx - IZPIOCP used				
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM 0.4	WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM	0.5	
IOCDS Tailoring and System Down Time	Multiple Cha	nnel Paths to 1	Device	
IOCDS Tailoring and System Down Time	Multiple Channel Path	s to 1 Device		
System down time Stand Alone VSE based		Subsystem provides channel paths	DPS and DPR	
System down time	" ESA Channel I/O S between up to 4/8		DPS and DPR	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * *	between up to 4/8 " In S/370-mode, SA			
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * * IPL A	between up to 4/8 " In S/370-mode, SA Pathing'	s channel paths N must manage 'Alt ' channels, specified vi	ernate	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * IPL A LPAR Activation Optional A A A IML	between up to 4/8 " In S/370-mode, SA Pathing'	s channel paths N must manage 'Alt	ernate	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * FIL A LPAR Activation Optional A A A	, In S/370-mode, SA Pathing' Between 2 'subsequent ADD cuu	s channel paths N must manage 'Alt ' channels, specified vi (S), type vert SIOF requests t	ernate ª o SSCHs,	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * IPL A LPAR Activation Optional A A A IML No errors >	between up to 4/8 " In S/370-mode, SA Pathing' Between 2 'subsequent ADD cuu " S/370 LPARs conv thus providing alt	Channel paths W must manage 'Alt ' channels, specified vi (S), type vert SIOF requests t ernate pathing as fo	ernate ° o SSCHs, or ESA-mode	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * IPL A LPAR Activation Optional A A A IML A no errors errors IOCP Generation at SVP EXEC IZPIOCP	, In S/370-mode, SA Pathing' Between 2 'subsequent ADD cuu	Channel paths W must manage 'Alt ' channels, specified vi (S), type vert SIOF requests t ernate pathing as fo	ernate ª o SSCHs,	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * IPL A LPAR Activation Optional A A A IML Optional IML A IML Optional IML A IM	between up to 4/8 " In S/370-mode, SA Pathing' Between 2 'subsequent ADD cuu " S/370 LPARs conv thus providing alt	Coss v/ IOCDS v/ IOCDS	ernate <sup>a</sup> o SSCHs, or ESA-mode	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * IPL A LPAR Activation Optional A A A IML NO errors iors iOCP Generation (Build) * A	between up to 4/8 ,, In S/370-mode, S/ Pathing' Between 2 'subsequent ADD cuu ,, S/370 LPARs comp thus providing alt VSE-mode Processor w/o I	CCDS W/ IOCDS 4381-9xE, 9672 LPAR	ernate a o SSCHs, or ESA-mode ESA-mode w/ IOCDS 9x21, ES/9000,	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * IPL A LPAR Activation Optional A A A IML A IML A NO errors Fors IOCP Generation (Build) * Edit IOCDS SVP Editor ICCF Editor A	between up to 4/8 , In S/370-mode, S/ Pathing' Between 2 'subsequent ADD cuu , S/370 LPARs conv thus providing alt VSE - mode Processor w/o I Example 9370 VSE 1/0 S10 Max #paths 2, via	Channel paths W must manage 'Alt ' channels, specified vi (S), type vert SIOF requests t ernate pathing as for S/370-mode CDDS W/ IOCDS S/370-mode CDDS V/ IOCDS 4381-9xE, 9672 LPAR F SIOF (*) S/W 4/8 via IOCDS	ernate a o SSCHs, or ESA-mode ESA-mode w/ IOCDS 9x21, ES/9000, 9672 SSCH 4/8 via IOCDS	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based * IPL A LPAR Activation Optional A A A IML A IML A NO errors Fors IOCP Generation (Build) X Edit IOCDS SVP Editor ICCF Editor A	between up to 4/8 , In S/370-mode, S/ Pathing' Between 2 'subsequent ADD cuu , S/370 LPARs conv thus providing alt VSE - mode Processor w/o I Example 9370 VSE 1/0 SI0	Channel paths N must manage 'Alt ' channels, specified vi (S),type vert SIOF requests t ernate pathing as fo S/370-mode 00DS w/ IOCDS 4381-9xE, 9672 LPAR F SIOF (*) S/W 4/8 via IOCDS S),3380 ADD cuu,3380 ADD cuu,3380 SCH	ernate a o SSCHs, or ESA-mode <u>W/ IOCDS</u> 9x21, ES/9000, 9672 SSCH	
System down time Stand Alone VSE based *  IPL A  LPAR Activation Optional A A A IML A IML A no errors errors IOCP Generation (Build) *  Edit IOCDS SVP Editor ICCF Editor A	between up to 4/8 ,, In S/370-mode, S/ Pathing' Between 2 'subsequent ADD cuu ,, S/370 LPARs conv thus providing alt VSE-mode Processor w/o I Example 9370 VSE I/0 SI0 Max #paths 2, via VSE ADD ADD cuu( (*) S/370 LPAR conv SI0	Channel paths N must manage 'Alt ' channels, specified vi (S),type vert SIOF requests t ernate pathing as fo S/370-mode 00DS w/ IOCDS 4381-9xE, 9672 LPAR F SIOF (*) S/W 4/8 via IOCDS S),3380 ADD cuu,3380 ADD cuu,3380 SCH	ernate a o SSCHs, or ESA-mode ESA-mode w/ IOCDS 9x21, ES/9000, 9672 SSCH 4/8 via IOCDS	

IC	OCP Statements		Example <sup>2</sup>	1: Multiple Paths	s to a Device
IOCP Statements (M	lacroinstructions)		_		
" ID			Example 1: Multi	ple Paths to a Devi	<u>ce</u>
Optional heading	g for output listings		(Uni or CHP	39 ID 20 C	90 3390s L 0 DASDs
" CHPID			N way)	ID 21	100 11F
	sical) channels/channel	naths	CHI		
	(Byte/Block/ESCON-channel,	-	CHI	PD 23	
	ESCON CTC-connection, Int.I paths to channel numbers/char	)isk SCSI bus) nnel sets	"IOCDS		
" CNTLUNIT			a) 4.5 MB Parall		
Describes contro channel paths	ol unit images associat	ed to the	CHPID * CNTLUNIT CNTLUNIT	PATH=(20,21,22,23),TYH CUNUMBR=001,PATH=(20,2 SHARED=N,PROTOCL=S4,UK CUNUMBR=002,PATH=(22,2	21),UNITADD=((00,32)), X NIT=3990
<ul> <li>Channel paths that</li> <li>Unit addresses that</li> </ul>	of the control unit image at can be used to reach the ( hat the control unit image re used (DCI/Streaming 3MB/Stre	cognizes	* IODEVICE b) ESCON Channel	SHARED=N,PROTOCL=S4,U ADDRESS=(100,32),CUNU	NIT=3990
"IODEVICE	-		CHPID	PATH=(20,21,22,23),TYF	PE=CNC
	al) devices at the contr	ol units	* CNTLUNIT CNTLUNIT	CUNUMBR=001,PATH=(20,2 UNIT=3990 CUNUMBR=002,PATH=(22,2	
- Device character:	istics		*	UNIT=3990 ADDRESS=(100,32),CUNU	
- Device address nu If the devices seen by th	which the device is attached umber (must be in range 000 - he S/390 S/W are not simulate	· FFF for VSE)			1 <b>5R</b> -(001,002),0011-3370
the logical devices are a A similar consideration a	applies to control unit image	s, which may be e.g.	" ADD stateme	nts in VSE/ESA	
(NOTE that in IOCP terms	ter or a simulated one (RAMA( a 'logical control unit' is	different, i.e. a	ADD 100:1	IIF,ECKD	
devices in common)	images that physically or log	ically attach 170			
WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM	0.8	WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM	0.9
Example 2	2: 3490 Tape Attach	ment	Exan	nple 3: Alternate	Pathing
Example 2: 3490 Ta	pe Attachment				
3490 with 2 Paths a	nd 4 Drives, plus Prefer	red Paths	Example 3: Alter	nate Pathing	
	3490 Su				vice from 2 CDUs
(Uni or CHPID 2 N way)	20 A	130	wuitiple 4.5w Par	allel Paths to a De	vice from 2 CPUS
Processor (ESA mode) CHIPD 2	21 В	131 132	(Uni or N way) CPU l		(Uni or N way) CPU 2
			(ESA mode)		LPAR1 (S/370 mode)
			CHPID's		CHPID's
a) 4.5 MB Parallel Chann	nels:		21 22 23 24		26 27 LPAR image S/370 channels
* CHPID PATH=(20,21 * 1st Channel CNTLUNIT CUNUMPR-001		-N ¥			6 7
UNITADD=((3 * 2nd Channel	2,PATH=(20),PROTOCL=S4,SHARED 50,16)),UNIT=3490 2 PATH=(21) PROTOCL=S6 SHARED				
	2,PATH=(21),PROTOCL=S4,SHARED 50,16)),UNIT=3490 wwn below	=N <i>,</i> X			
b) ESCON Channels:					
* CHPID PATH=(20,21 * lst Channel CNTLUNIT CUNUMBR=001	.),TYPE=CNC ,PATH=(20),UNITADD=((30,16))	,UNIT=3490	St	3 orage Cluster 1 Stora	990 ge Cluster 2
* * 3490 13	2,PATH=(21),UNITADD=((30,16)) 50 133 plus preferred paths				
IODEVICE ADDRESS=(13 IODEVICE ADDRESS=(13	50,1),CUNUMBR=(001),UNIT=3490 51,1),CUNUMBR=(002),UNIT=3490 52,1),CUNUMBR=(001),UNIT=3490 53,1),CUNUMBR=(002),UNIT=3490	,STADET=N,PATH=21 ,STADET=N,PATH=20		3 (cuu : X20 X3F	390 )
" ADD statements	in VSE/ESA				
ADD 130:133,3490	1				
WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM	Q.10	WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM	0.11

Example 3: Alternate Pathing	Example 3: Alternate Pathing			
Example 3 - Definitions CPU1	Example 3 - Definitions CPU2			
<pre>, DCDS</pre>	<pre>, IOCDDS Note: VSE/ESA can run on the ES/9000 (except early ES/9221 machines) and 9672 processors in S/370 mode only in an LPAR ! The LPAR image, defined at the service processor, has to reflect the mapping of CHPID's for LPAR! CHPID PATH=(26), TYPE=BL, PART=(LPAR1, REC) CHPID PATH=(27), TYPE=BL, PART=(LPAR1, REC) * ist Storage Cluster 3990 CNTLUNIT CUNUMBR=001, PATH=(26), PROTOCL=S4, SHARED=N, X UNITADD=(20, 522), UNIT=3990 * and Storage Cluster 3990 CNTLUNIT CUNUMBR=002, PATH=(27), PROTOCL=S4, SHARED=N, X UNITADD=(20, 522), UNIT=3990 * 3390 X20 X3F IDDEVICE ADDRESS=(620, 32), CUNUMBR=(001, 002), UNIT=3390, STADET=N</pre>			
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM 0.12	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM 0.13			
<ul> <li>IOCP and Performance</li> <li>Note: All comments and examples are valid for \$/390 ES/9000 processors or 9672 servers. They are also valid for ES/4381 processors like the 4381-P13 (XA/370) or the 4381-9xE (ESA/370) processors. (XA/370) processors.</li> <li>Wrong IOCDS definitions can cause massive performance degradation to be observed in terms of <ul> <li>high I/O service times</li> <li>high Online response or Batch elapsed times</li> <li>more CPU-time</li> </ul> </li> <li>Also functional problems may occur</li> <li>General Rules for Correct IOCDS Definitions: <ul> <li>use the right VSE based version of IOCP</li> <li>Refer to chart on IOCP versions</li> </ul> </li> <li>Dependent of the mode of VSE/ESA (S/370 or ESA mode)</li> <li>Define the correct statements in the IOCDS and the VSE IPL procedure</li> </ul> <li>Refer to Example 3</li> <li>Before changing an IOCDS</li> <li>(I/O Configuration Program - Usar's Guide', GCSB-0097 (IXP version) or GCSB-0401 (IZP version)</li>	Specific Rules for CHPID . Up to 8 chpids in each CHPID macro possible . For parallel channels, gecify always (if possible) CHPID TYPE=BL. Use TYPE=BY only if really needed (e.g. for RSCS connections) Specific Rules for CNTLUNIT specific Rules for CNTLUNIT statement for each 'control unit image' in a physical CU box Control unit images (having a unique CUNUMBR): . Specify exactly 1 CNTLUNIT statement for each 'control unit image' in a physical CU box Control unit images (having a unique CUNUMBR): . Specify exactly 1 CNTLUNIT statement for each 'control unit image' in a physical CU box Control unit images (having a unique CUNUMBR): . Specify exactly 1 CNTLUNIT statement for each 'control unit image' in a physical CU box Control unit images (having a unique CUNUMBR): . Specify storage Cluster (Cl) . (2 per 390'-6 or 9330-001, 4 per 9390-002) . Sport of specify always the storage control clusters . Specify always (if possible) SHARED=N. . StateD=M allows multiple concurrent I/0 requests Les ShARED=Y only if really neededed . Sp. for . 3420 tape units . StateD=M allows multiple concurrent I/0 requests			
GC38-0097 (IXP version) or GC38-0401 (IZP version) The rules listed there must always be followed	- SX/4 CONTROLLERS (SHARED=N may result in CPU-time overhead)			
WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM 0.14	WK/HJU 2001-07-15 Copyright IBM 0.15			

IOCP and Performance -Rules			IOCP and Performance -Rules		
<ul> <li>For paralle Specify al Use PROT (S for 3.0 h Some para dependen e.g. PROTOCL</li> <li>Specify via as the HA Occuring are 2, 4, 8, 16,</li> <li>If contri- lost inte</li> <li>IODEVICE: IOCDS Avoids a sep Assparate V</li> <li>Any IODEV must NOT</li> </ul>	<pre>dB/sec and S4 for 4.5 MB/sec parallel cl ameters in the CNTLUNIT statem at on the settings in the control of a UNITADD the same number of W CE has set in the control unit a powers of 2 (control unit dependent): , 32 or 64 oller is set for more devices than in I prupts require extra CPU-time for errol s may be added as 'look-ahead' parate IOCP build before a new device is /SE IPL is sufficient VICE which is NOT actually attact f be ADDed in VSE s that VSE never will issue any I/0 require s that VS</pre>	hannels) hent are unit devices devices cocps, recovery in the s attached. ched	<ul> <li>represented         <ul> <li>A logical I/0 d</li> <li>A single IODEVI devices</li> <li>Alternate Pathi</li> <li>Specify in the number of d control unit</li> <li>If 3490/3490E</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Al/logical I/O device must by exactly 1 IODEVICE s evice is e.g. a RAMAC simulate CE statement may represent sev ng in S/370-mode is an excepti e ADDRESS parameter th evices as the H/W CE ha E are defined, preferred p ODEVICE PATH=chpid	Statement d device. reral consecutive I/ con (see Example 3) he same is set in the
wк/ныu 2001-07-15 Ente	Copyright IBM erprise Storage Server (ES	0.16 S)	WK/HJU 2001-07-15	Copyright IBM	0.17
Ente	PART P. erprise Storage Server (ES	S)			
<ul> <li>was added in the</li> <li>Refer also e.g. t</li> <li>the ESS annour</li> <li>the ESS home p http://ww</li> <li>IBM ESS Introc available via</li> <li>IBM ESS Perfor Version 1.0, e</li> <li>Via ESS home p</li> </ul>	Information together with FlashCopy new VSE/ESA V2.5 performance document. to ncement letter, dated 99-07-27 bage ww.lbm.com/storage/ess duction and Planning Guide, GC26-7294 the URL above rmance White Paper 59 pages, by John Ponder et al.				
HAN WK/HJU 2001-07-15	ND (Have a nice day)	P.1			